



酱油



伞



饼干



米饭



灯笼

点心



15-MINUTE

MANDARIN  
CHINESE

LEARN IN JUST 12 WEEKS

FREE  
AUDIO  
APP









**15 –MINUTE**  
**MANDARIN**  
**CHINESE**  
**LEARN IN JUST 12 WEEKS**

MA CHENG

ISBN: 9781465462978





Penguin  
Random  
House

**Senior Editors** Angeles Gavira, Christine Stroyan

**Senior Art Editor** Ina Stradins

**Art Editor** Hugh Schermuly

**US Managing Editor** Lori Hand

**US Editor** Kayla Dugger

**Jacket Design Development Manager** Sophia MTT

**Jacket Designer** Juhi Sheth

**Pre-Producer** David Almond

**Senior Producer** Ana Vallarino

**Associate Publisher** Liz Wheeler

**Publishing Director** Jonathan Metcalf

**Language content for Dorling Kindersley by  
g-and-w publishing**

This American Edition, 2018

First American Edition, 2005

Published in the United States by DK Publishing  
1450 Broadway, Suite 801, New York, NY 10018

18 19 20 21 22 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
001-196643-Jan/2018

Copyright © 2005, 2012, 2013, 2018

Dorling Kindersley Limited

DK, a Division of Penguin Random House LLC

All rights reserved.

Without limiting the rights under copyright reserved  
above, no part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or  
transmitted in any form or by any means (electronic,  
mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise)  
without the prior written permission of  
the copyright owner.

Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited.

A catalog record for this book is available from the  
Library of Congress.

ISBN 978-1-4654-6297-8

DK books are available at special discounts when purchased  
in bulk for sales promotions, premiums, fund-raising, or  
educational use. For details, contact: DK Publishing Special  
Markets, 1450 Broadway, Suite 801, New York, NY 10018  
SpecialSales@dk.com

Printed in China

For the curious

[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

# CONTENTS

How to use this book 4

## WEEK 1

### INTRODUCTIONS

Hello	8
My family	10
Your relatives	12
To be/to have	14
Review and repeat	16

## WEEK 2

### EATING AND DRINKING

In the café	18
In the restaurant	20
Dishes	22
Requests	24
Review and repeat	26

## WEEK 3

### MAKING ARRANGEMENTS

Days and months	28
Time and numbers	30
Appointments	32
On the telephone	34
Review and repeat	36

## WEEK 4

### TRAVEL

At the train station	38
To go/to take	40
Bus, taxi, and subway	42
On the road	44
Review and repeat	46





## WEEK 5

### GETTING AROUND

Around town	48
Asking directions	50
Sightseeing	52
At the airport	54
Review and repeat	56

## WEEK 6

### ACCOMMODATION

Booking a room	58
In the hotel	60
Hot spas	62
Adjectives	64
Review and repeat	66

## WEEK 7

### SHOPPING

Department store	68
Electronics store	70
At the supermarket	72
Clothes and shoes	74
Review and repeat	76

## WEEK 8

### WORK AND STUDY

Jobs	78
The office	80
At the conference	82
In business	84
Review and repeat	86

## WEEK 9

### HEALTH

At the pharmacy	88
The body	90
With the doctor	92
In the hospital	94
Review and repeat	96

## WEEK 10

### AT HOME

Home	98
Inside the home	100
The garden	102
Animals	104
Review and repeat	106

## WEEK 11

### SERVICES

Post office and bank	108
Repairs	110
To come	112
Police and crime	114
Review and repeat	116

## WEEK 12

### LEISURE AND SOCIALIZING

Leisure time	118
Sport and hobbies	120
Socializing	122
Review and repeat	124
Reinforce and progress	126

## MENU GUIDE

128

## ENGLISH-CHINESE DICTIONARY

138

## THE CHINESE WRITING SYSTEM

152

## USEFUL SIGNS

158

## Acknowledgments

160



# How to use this book

The main part of this book is devoted to 12 themed chapters, broken down into five 15-minute daily lessons, the last of which is a revision lesson. So, in just 12 weeks you will have completed the course. A concluding reference section contains a menu guide, an English-to-Chinese dictionary, and a guide to Chinese characters.

## Warm up

Each day starts with a warm up that encourages you to recall vocabulary or phrases you have learned previously. The time in brackets indicates the amount of time you are expected to spend on each exercise.

## Useful phrases

Selected phrases relevant to the topic help you speak and understand.

## Cultural/Conversational tip

These panels provide additional insights into life in China and language usage.

122

WEEK 12

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "your husband" and "your wife." (pp.12-13)  
How do you say "lunch" and "dinner" in Chinese? (pp.20-21)  
Say "Sorry, I'm busy that day." (pp.32-33)

## SHÈJIÀO Socializing

As a business guest, it's more common to be invited to a restaurant than to someone's home. This is partly practical—people often have long commutes. But if you're staying for longer, you may be invited for a meal or a party.

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

您想来参加晚宴吗?  
*nín xiǎng lái cānjiā wǎnyǎn ma*

Would you like to come for dinner?

星期三怎么样?  
*xīngqī sān zěnmeyàng*

What about Wednesday?

下次吧。  
*xià yí cì ba*

Perhaps another time.



**Cultural tip** When visiting a Chinese home, remember to remove your shoes at the door. Take a gift for the host or hostess. Flowers, a bottle of wine, or a present from your home country will be greatly appreciated.

## 3 In conversation (6 minutes)

您想来参加星期二的晚餐吗?  
*nín xiǎng lái cānjiā xīngqī'èr de wǎnyǎn ma*

对不起,我星期二很忙。  
*duìbuqǐ, wǒ xīngqī'èr hěn máng*

Sorry, I'm busy on Tuesday.

星期四怎么样?  
*xīngqī sì zěnmeyàng*

What about Thursday?

## How to use the flap

The book's cover flaps allow you to conceal the Chinese so that you can test whether you have remembered correctly.

## Revision pages

A recap of selected elements of previous lessons helps to reinforce your knowledge.

56 WEEK 9

dǎ ān

Answers Case with flap

## FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ

### Review and repeat

#### 1 The body (1 minute)

1. 头  
2. 脸  
3. 鼻子  
4. 眼睛  
5. 耳朵  
6. 嘴巴  
7. 手  
8. 脚  
9. 腿  
10. 腰  
11. 背  
12. 脖子  
13. 肩膀  
14. 胳膊  
15. 手指  
16. 脚趾  
17. 指甲  
18. 头发  
19. 眉毛  
20. 睫毛  
21. 嘴唇  
22. 下巴  
23. 脖子  
24. 肩膀  
25. 胳膊  
26. 手指  
27. 脚趾  
28. 指甲  
29. 头发  
30. 眉毛  
31. 睫毛  
32. 嘴唇  
33. 下巴  
34. 脖子  
35. 肩膀  
36. 胳膊  
37. 手指  
38. 脚趾  
39. 指甲  
40. 头发  
41. 眉毛  
42. 睫毛  
43. 嘴唇  
44. 下巴  
45. 脖子  
46. 肩膀  
47. 胳膊  
48. 手指  
49. 脚趾  
50. 指甲  
51. 头发  
52. 眉毛  
53. 睫毛  
54. 嘴唇  
55. 下巴  
56. 脖子  
57. 肩膀  
58. 胳膊  
59. 手指  
60. 脚趾  
61. 指甲  
62. 头发  
63. 眉毛  
64. 睫毛  
65. 嘴唇  
66. 下巴  
67. 脖子  
68. 肩膀  
69. 胳膊  
70. 手指  
71. 脚趾  
72. 指甲  
73. 头发  
74. 眉毛  
75. 睫毛  
76. 嘴唇  
77. 下巴  
78. 脖子  
79. 肩膀  
80. 胳膊  
81. 手指  
82. 脚趾  
83. 指甲  
84. 头发  
85. 眉毛  
86. 睫毛  
87. 嘴唇  
88. 下巴  
89. 脖子  
90. 肩膀  
91. 胳膊  
92. 手指  
93. 脚趾  
94. 指甲  
95. 头发  
96. 眉毛  
97. 睫毛  
98. 嘴唇  
99. 下巴  
100. 脖子  
101. 肩膀  
102. 胳膊  
103. 手指  
104. 脚趾  
105. 指甲  
106. 头发  
107. 眉毛  
108. 睫毛  
109. 嘴唇  
110. 下巴  
111. 脖子  
112. 肩膀  
113. 胳膊  
114. 手指  
115. 脚趾  
116. 指甲  
117. 头发  
118. 眉毛  
119. 睫毛  
120. 嘴唇  
121. 下巴  
122. 脖子  
123. 肩膀  
124. 胳膊  
125. 手指  
126. 脚趾  
127. 指甲  
128. 头发  
129. 眉毛  
130. 睫毛  
131. 嘴唇  
132. 下巴  
133. 脖子  
134. 肩膀  
135. 胳膊  
136. 手指  
137. 脚趾  
138. 指甲  
139. 头发  
140. 眉毛  
141. 睫毛  
142. 嘴唇  
143. 下巴  
144. 脖子  
145. 肩膀  
146. 胳膊  
147. 手指  
148. 脚趾  
149. 指甲  
150. 头发  
151. 眉毛  
152. 睫毛  
153. 嘴唇  
154. 下巴  
155. 脖子  
156. 肩膀  
157. 胳膊  
158. 手指  
159. 脚趾  
160. 指甲  
161. 头发  
162. 眉毛  
163. 睫毛  
164. 嘴唇  
165. 下巴  
166. 脖子  
167. 肩膀  
168. 胳膊  
169. 手指  
170. 脚趾  
171. 指甲  
172. 头发  
173. 眉毛  
174. 睫毛  
175. 嘴唇  
176. 下巴  
177. 脖子  
178. 肩膀  
179. 胳膊  
180. 手指  
181. 脚趾  
182. 指甲  
183. 头发  
184. 眉毛  
185. 睫毛  
186. 嘴唇  
187. 下巴  
188. 脖子  
189. 肩膀  
190. 胳膊  
191. 手指  
192. 脚趾  
193. 指甲  
194. 头发  
195. 眉毛  
196. 睫毛  
197. 嘴唇  
198. 下巴  
199. 脖子  
200. 肩膀  
201. 胳膊  
202. 手指  
203. 脚趾  
204. 指甲  
205. 头发  
206. 眉毛  
207. 睫毛  
208. 嘴唇  
209. 下巴  
210. 脖子  
211. 肩膀  
212. 胳膊  
213. 手指  
214. 脚趾  
215. 指甲  
216. 头发  
217. 眉毛  
218. 睫毛  
219. 嘴唇  
220. 下巴  
221. 脖子  
222. 肩膀  
223. 胳膊  
224. 手指  
225. 脚趾  
226. 指甲  
227. 头发  
228. 眉毛  
229. 睫毛  
230. 嘴唇  
231. 下巴  
232. 脖子  
233. 肩膀  
234. 胳膊  
235. 手指  
236. 脚趾  
237. 指甲  
238. 头发  
239. 眉毛  
240. 睫毛  
241. 嘴唇  
242. 下巴  
243. 脖子  
244. 肩膀  
245. 胳膊  
246. 手指  
247. 脚趾  
248. 指甲  
249. 头发  
250. 眉毛  
251. 睫毛  
252. 嘴唇  
253. 下巴  
254. 脖子  
255. 肩膀  
256. 胳膊  
257. 手指  
258. 脚趾  
259. 指甲  
260. 头发  
261. 眉毛  
262. 睫毛  
263. 嘴唇  
264. 下巴  
265. 脖子  
266. 肩膀  
267. 胳膊  
268. 手指  
269. 脚趾  
270. 指甲  
271. 头发  
272. 眉毛  
273. 睫毛  
274. 嘴唇  
275. 下巴  
276. 脖子  
277. 肩膀  
278. 胳膊  
279. 手指  
280. 脚趾  
281. 指甲  
282. 头发  
283. 眉毛  
284. 睫毛  
285. 嘴唇  
286. 下巴  
287. 脖子  
288. 肩膀  
289. 胳膊  
290. 手指  
291. 脚趾  
292. 指甲  
293. 头发  
294. 眉毛  
295. 睫毛  
296. 嘴唇  
297. 下巴  
298. 脖子  
299. 肩膀  
300. 胳膊  
301. 手指  
302. 脚趾  
303. 指甲  
304. 头发  
305. 眉毛  
306. 睫毛  
307. 嘴唇  
308. 下巴  
309. 脖子  
310. 肩膀  
311. 胳膊  
312. 手指  
313. 脚趾  
314. 指甲  
315. 头发  
316. 眉毛  
317. 睫毛  
318. 嘴唇  
319. 下巴  
320. 脖子  
321. 肩膀  
322. 胳膊  
323. 手指  
324. 脚趾  
325. 指甲  
326. 头发  
327. 眉毛  
328. 睫毛  
329. 嘴唇  
330. 下巴  
331. 脖子  
332. 肩膀  
333. 胳膊  
334. 手指  
335. 脚趾  
336. 指甲  
337. 头发  
338. 眉毛  
339. 睫毛  
340. 嘴唇  
341. 下巴  
342. 脖子  
343. 肩膀  
344. 胳膊  
345. 手指  
346. 脚趾  
347. 指甲  
348. 头发  
349. 眉毛  
350. 睫毛  
351. 嘴唇  
352. 下巴  
353. 脖子  
354. 肩膀  
355. 胳膊  
356. 手指  
357. 脚趾  
358. 指甲  
359. 头发  
360. 眉毛  
361. 睫毛  
362. 嘴唇  
363. 下巴  
364. 脖子  
365. 肩膀  
366. 胳膊  
367. 手指  
368. 脚趾  
369. 指甲  
370. 头发  
371. 眉毛  
372. 睫毛  
373. 嘴唇  
374. 下巴  
375. 脖子  
376. 肩膀  
377. 胳膊  
378. 手指  
379. 脚趾  
380. 指甲  
381. 头发  
382. 眉毛  
383. 睫毛  
384. 嘴唇  
385. 下巴  
386. 脖子  
387. 肩膀  
388. 胳膊  
389. 手指  
390. 脚趾  
391. 指甲  
392. 头发  
393. 眉毛  
394. 睫毛  
395. 嘴唇  
396. 下巴  
397. 脖子  
398. 肩膀  
399. 胳膊  
400. 手指  
401. 脚趾  
402. 指甲  
403. 头发  
404. 眉毛  
405. 睫毛  
406. 嘴唇  
407. 下巴  
408. 脖子  
409. 肩膀  
410. 胳膊  
411. 手指  
412. 脚趾  
413. 指甲  
414. 头发  
415. 眉毛  
416. 睫毛  
417. 嘴唇  
418. 下巴  
419. 脖子  
420. 肩膀  
421. 胳膊  
422. 手指  
423. 脚趾  
424. 指甲  
425. 头发  
426. 眉毛  
427. 睫毛  
428. 嘴唇  
429. 下巴  
430. 脖子  
431. 肩膀  
432. 胳膊  
433. 手指  
434. 脚趾  
435. 指甲  
436. 头发  
437. 眉毛  
438. 睫毛  
439. 嘴唇  
440. 下巴  
441. 脖子  
442. 肩膀  
443. 胳膊  
444. 手指  
445. 脚趾  
446. 指甲  
447. 头发  
448. 眉毛  
449. 睫毛  
450. 嘴唇  
451. 下巴  
452. 脖子  
453. 肩膀  
454. 胳膊  
455. 手指  
456. 脚趾  
457. 指甲  
458. 头发  
459. 眉毛  
460. 睫毛  
461. 嘴唇  
462. 下巴  
463. 脖子  
464. 肩膀  
465. 胳膊  
466. 手指  
467. 脚趾  
468. 指甲  
469. 头发  
470. 眉毛  
471. 睫毛  
472. 嘴唇  
473. 下巴  
474. 脖子  
475. 肩膀  
476. 胳膊  
477. 手指  
478. 脚趾  
479. 指甲  
480. 头发  
481. 眉毛  
482. 睫毛  
483. 嘴唇  
484. 下巴  
485. 脖子  
486. 肩膀  
487. 胳膊  
488. 手指  
489. 脚趾  
490. 指甲  
491. 头发  
492. 眉毛  
493. 睫毛  
494. 嘴唇  
495. 下巴  
496. 脖子  
497. 肩膀  
498. 胳膊  
499. 手指  
500. 脚趾  
501. 指甲  
502. 头发  
503. 眉毛  
504. 睫毛  
505. 嘴唇  
506. 下巴  
507. 脖子  
508. 肩膀  
509. 胳膊  
510. 手指  
511. 脚趾  
512. 指甲  
513. 头发  
514. 眉毛  
515. 睫毛  
516. 嘴唇  
517. 下巴  
518. 脖子  
519. 肩膀  
520. 胳膊  
521. 手指  
522. 脚趾  
523. 指甲  
524. 头发  
525. 眉毛  
526. 睫毛  
527. 嘴唇  
528. 下巴  
529. 脖子  
530. 肩膀  
531. 胳膊  
532. 手指  
533. 脚趾  
534. 指甲  
535. 头发  
536. 眉毛  
537. 睫毛  
538. 嘴唇  
539. 下巴  
540. 脖子  
541. 肩膀  
542. 胳膊  
543. 手指  
544. 脚趾  
545. 指甲  
546. 头发  
547. 眉毛  
548. 睫毛  
549. 嘴唇  
550. 下巴  
551. 脖子  
552. 肩膀  
553. 胳膊  
554. 手指  
555. 脚趾  
556. 指甲  
557. 头发  
558. 眉毛  
559. 睫毛  
560. 嘴唇  
561. 下巴  
562. 脖子  
563. 肩膀  
564. 胳膊  
565. 手指  
566. 脚趾  
567. 指甲  
568. 头发  
569. 眉毛  
570. 睫毛  
571. 嘴唇  
572. 下巴  
573. 脖子  
574. 肩膀  
575. 胳膊  
576. 手指  
577. 脚趾  
578. 指甲  
579. 头发  
580. 眉毛  
581. 睫毛  
582. 嘴唇  
583. 下巴  
584. 脖子  
585. 肩膀  
586. 胳膊  
587. 手指  
588. 脚趾  
589. 指甲  
590. 头发  
591. 眉毛  
592. 睫毛  
593. 嘴唇  
594. 下巴  
595. 脖子  
596. 肩膀  
597. 胳膊  
598. 手指  
599. 脚趾  
600. 指甲  
601. 头发  
602. 眉毛  
603. 睫毛  
604. 嘴唇  
605. 下巴  
606. 脖子  
607. 肩膀  
608. 胳膊  
609. 手指  
610. 脚趾  
611. 指甲  
612. 头发  
613. 眉毛  
614. 睫毛  
615. 嘴唇  
616. 下巴  
617. 脖子  
618. 肩膀  
619. 胳膊  
620. 手指  
621. 脚趾  
622. 指甲  
623. 头发  
624. 眉毛  
625. 睫毛  
626. 嘴唇  
627. 下巴  
628. 脖子  
629. 肩膀  
630. 胳膊  
631. 手指  
632. 脚趾  
633. 指甲  
634. 头发  
635. 眉毛  
636. 睫毛  
637. 嘴唇  
638. 下巴  
639. 脖子  
640. 肩膀  
641. 胳膊  
642. 手指  
643. 脚趾  
644. 指甲  
645. 头发  
646. 眉毛  
647. 睫毛  
648. 嘴唇  
649. 下巴  
650. 脖子  
651. 肩膀  
652. 胳膊  
653. 手指  
654. 脚趾  
655. 指甲  
656. 头发  
657. 眉毛  
658. 睫毛  
659. 嘴唇  
660. 下巴  
661. 脖子  
662. 肩膀  
663. 胳膊  
664. 手指  
665. 脚趾  
666. 指甲  
667. 头发  
668. 眉毛  
669. 睫毛  
670. 嘴唇  
671. 下巴  
672. 脖子  
673. 肩膀  
674. 胳膊  
675. 手指  
676. 脚趾  
677. 指甲  
678. 头发  
679. 眉毛  
680. 睫毛  
681. 嘴唇  
682. 下巴  
683. 脖子  
684. 肩膀  
685. 胳膊  
686. 手指  
687. 脚趾  
688. 指甲  
689. 头发  
690. 眉毛  
691. 睫毛  
692. 嘴唇  
693. 下巴  
694. 脖子  
695. 肩膀  
696. 胳膊  
697. 手指  
698. 脚趾  
699. 指甲  
700. 头发  
701. 眉毛  
702. 睫毛  
703. 嘴唇  
704. 下巴  
705. 脖子  
706. 肩膀  
707. 胳膊  
708. 手指  
709. 脚趾  
710. 指甲  
711. 头发  
712. 眉毛  
713. 睫毛  
714. 嘴唇  
715. 下巴  
716. 脖子  
717. 肩膀  
718. 胳膊  
719. 手指  
720. 脚趾  
721. 指甲  
722. 头发  
723. 眉毛  
724. 睫毛  
725. 嘴唇  
726. 下巴  
727. 脖子  
728. 肩膀  
729. 胳膊  
730. 手指  
731. 脚趾  
732. 指甲  
733. 头发  
734. 眉毛  
735. 睫毛  
736. 嘴唇  
737. 下巴  
738. 脖子  
739. 肩膀  
740. 胳膊  
741. 手指  
742. 脚趾  
743. 指甲  
744. 头发  
745. 眉毛  
746. 睫毛  
747. 嘴唇  
748. 下巴  
749. 脖子  
750. 肩膀  
751. 胳膊  
752. 手指  
753. 脚趾  
754. 指甲  
755. 头发  
756. 眉毛  
757. 睫毛  
758. 嘴唇  
759. 下巴  
760. 脖子  
761. 肩膀  
762. 胳膊  
763. 手指  
764. 脚趾  
765. 指甲  
766. 头发  
767. 眉毛  
768. 睫毛  
769. 嘴唇  
770. 下巴  
771. 脖子  
772. 肩膀  
773. 胳膊  
774. 手指  
775. 脚趾  
776. 指甲  
777. 头发  
778. 眉毛  
779. 睫毛  
780. 嘴唇  
781. 下巴  
782. 脖子  
783. 肩膀  
784. 胳膊  
785. 手指  
786. 脚趾  
787. 指甲  
788. 头发  
789. 眉毛  
790. 睫毛  
791. 嘴唇  
792. 下巴  
793. 脖子  
794. 肩膀  
795. 胳膊  
796. 手指  
797. 脚趾  
798. 指甲  
799. 头发  
800. 眉毛  
801. 睫毛  
802. 嘴唇  
803. 下巴  
804. 脖子  
805. 肩膀  
806. 胳膊  
807. 手指  
808. 脚趾  
809. 指甲  
810. 头发  
811. 眉毛  
812. 睫毛  
813. 嘴唇  
814. 下巴  
815. 脖子  
816. 肩膀  
817. 胳膊  
818. 手指  
819. 脚趾  
820. 指甲  
821. 头发  
822. 眉毛  
823. 睫毛  
824. 嘴唇  
825. 下巴  
826. 脖子  
827. 肩膀  
828. 胳膊  
829. 手指  
830. 脚趾  
831. 指甲  
832. 头发  
833. 眉毛  
834. 睫毛  
835. 嘴唇  
836. 下巴  
837. 脖子  
838. 肩膀  
839. 胳膊  
840. 手指  
841. 脚趾  
842. 指甲  
843. 头发  
844. 眉毛  
845. 睫毛  
846. 嘴唇  
847. 下巴  
848. 脖子  
849. 肩膀  
850. 胳膊  
851. 手指  
852. 脚趾  
853. 指甲  
854. 头发  
855. 眉毛  
856. 睫毛  
857. 嘴唇  
858. 下巴  
859. 脖子  
860. 肩膀  
861. 胳膊  
862. 手指  
863. 脚趾  
864. 指甲  
865. 头发  
866. 眉毛  
867. 睫毛  
868. 嘴唇  
869. 下巴  
870. 脖子  
871. 肩膀  
872. 胳膊  
873. 手指  
874. 脚趾  
875. 指甲  
876. 头发  
877. 眉毛  
878. 睫毛  
879. 嘴唇  
880. 下巴  
881. 脖子  
882. 肩膀  
883. 胳膊  
884. 手指  
885. 脚趾  
886. 指甲  
887. 头发  
888. 眉毛  
889. 睫毛  
890. 嘴唇  
891. 下巴  
892. 脖子  
893. 肩膀  
894. 胳膊  
895. 手指  
896. 脚趾  
897. 指甲  
898. 头发  
899. 眉毛  
900. 睫毛  
901. 嘴唇  
902. 下巴  
903. 脖子  
904. 肩膀  
905. 胳膊  
906. 手指  
907. 脚趾  
908. 指甲  
909. 头发  
910. 眉毛  
911. 睫毛  
912. 嘴唇  
913. 下巴  
914. 脖子  
915. 肩膀  
916. 胳膊  
917. 手指  
918. 脚趾  
919. 指甲  
920. 头发  
921. 眉毛  
922. 睫毛  
923. 嘴唇  
924. 下巴  
925. 脖子  
926. 肩膀  
927. 胳膊  
928. 手指  
929. 脚趾  
930. 指甲  
931. 头发  
932. 眉毛  
933. 睫毛  
934. 嘴唇  
935. 下巴  
936. 脖子  
937. 肩膀  
938. 胳膊  
939. 手指  
940. 脚趾  
941. 指甲  
942. 头发  
943. 眉毛  
944. 睫毛  
945. 嘴唇  
946. 下巴  
947. 脖子  
948. 肩膀  
949. 胳膊  
950. 手指  
951. 脚趾  
952. 指甲  
953. 头发  
954. 眉毛  
955. 睫毛  
956. 嘴唇  
957. 下巴  
958. 脖子  
959. 肩膀  
960. 胳膊  
961. 手指  
962. 脚趾  
963. 指甲  
964. 头发  
965. 眉毛  
966. 睫毛  
967. 嘴唇  
968. 下巴  
969. 脖子  
970. 肩膀  
971. 胳膊  
972. 手指  
973. 脚趾  
974. 指甲  
975. 头发  
976. 眉毛  
977. 睫毛  
978. 嘴唇  
979. 下巴  
980. 脖子  
981. 肩膀  
982. 胳膊  
983. 手指  
984. 脚趾  
985. 指甲  
986. 头发  
987. 眉毛  
988. 睫毛  
989. 嘴唇  
990. 下巴  
991. 脖子  
992. 肩膀  
993. 胳膊  
994. 手指  
995. 脚趾  
996. 指甲  
997. 头发  
998. 眉毛  
999. 睫毛  
1000. 嘴唇

#### 2 On the phone (1 minute)

1. 你好  
2. 你好  
3. 你好  
4. 你好  
5. 你好  
6. 你好  
7. 你好  
8. 你好  
9. 你好  
10. 你好  
11. 你好  
12. 你好  
13. 你好  
14. 你好  
15. 你好  
16. 你好  
17. 你好  
18. 你好  
19. 你好  
20. 你好  
21. 你好  
22. 你好  
23. 你好  
24. 你好  
25. 你好  
26. 你好  
27. 你好  
28. 你好  
29. 你好  
30. 你好  
31. 你好  
32. 你好  
33. 你好  
34. 你好  
35. 你好  
36. 你好  
37. 你好  
38. 你好  
39. 你好  
40. 你好  
41. 你好  
42. 你好  
43. 你好  
44. 你好  
45. 你好  
46. 你好  
47. 你好  
48. 你好  
49. 你好  
50. 你好  
51. 你好  
52. 你好  
53. 你好  
54. 你好  
55. 你好  
56. 你好  
57. 你好  
58. 你好  
59. 你好  
60. 你好  
61. 你好  
62. 你好  
63. 你好  
64. 你好  
65. 你好  
66. 你好  
67. 你好  
68. 你好  
69. 你好  
70. 你好  
71. 你好  
72. 你好  
73. 你好  
74. 你好  
75. 你好  
76. 你好  
77. 你好  
78. 你好  
79. 你好  
80. 你好  
81. 你好  
82. 你好  
83. 你好  
84. 你好  
85. 你好  
86. 你好  
87. 你好  
88. 你好  
89. 你好  
90. 你好  
91. 你好  
92. 你好  
93. 你好  
94. 你好  
95. 你好  
96. 你好  
97. 你好  
98. 你好  
99. 你好  
100. 你好

#### 3 At the doctor's (1 minute)

1. 你好  
2. 你好  
3. 你好  
4. 你好  
5. 你好  
6. 你好  
7. 你好  
8. 你好  
9. 你好  
10. 你好  
11. 你好  
12. 你好  
13. 你好  
14. 你好  
15. 你好  
16. 你好  
17. 你好  
18. 你好  
19. 你好  
20. 你好  
21. 你好  
22. 你好  
23. 你好  
24. 你好  
25. 你好  
26. 你好  
27. 你好  
28. 你好  
29. 你好  
30. 你好  
31. 你好  
32. 你好  
33. 你好  
34. 你好  
35. 你好  
36. 你好  
37. 你好  
38. 你好  
39. 你好  
40. 你好  
41. 你好  
42. 你好  
43. 你好  
44. 你好  
45. 你好  
46. 你好  
47. 你好  
48. 你好  
49. 你好  
50. 你好  
51. 你好  
52. 你好  
53. 你好  
54. 你好  
55. 你好  
56. 你好  
57. 你好  
58. 你好  
59. 你好  
60. 你好  
61. 你好  
62. 你好  
63. 你好  
64. 你好  
65. 你好  
66. 你好  
67. 你好  
68. 你好  
69. 你好  
70. 你好  
71. 你好  
72. 你好  
73. 你好  
74. 你好  
75. 你好  
76. 你好  
77. 你好  
78. 你好  
79. 你好  
80. 你好  
81. 你好  
82. 你好  
83. 你好  
84. 你好  
85. 你好  
86. 你好  
87. 你好  
88. 你好  
89. 你好  
90. 你好  
91. 你好  
92. 你好  
93. 你好  
94. 你好  
95. 你好  
96. 你好  
97. 你好  
98. 你好  
99. 你好  
100. 你好

#### 4 At the doctor's (1 minute)

1. 你好  
2. 你好  
3. 你好  
4. 你好  
5. 你好  
6. 你好  
7. 你好  
8. 你好  
9. 你好  
10. 你好  
11. 你好  
12. 你好  
13. 你好  
14. 你好  
15. 你好  
16. 你好  
17. 你好  
18. 你好  
19. 你好  
20. 你好  
21. 你好  
22. 你好  
23. 你好  
24. 你好  
25. 你好  
26. 你好  
27. 你好  
28. 你好  
29. 你好  
30. 你好  
31. 你好  
32. 你好  
33. 你好  
34. 你好  
35. 你好  
36. 你好  
37. 你好  
38. 你好  
39. 你好  
40. 你好  
41. 你好  
42. 你好  
43. 你好  
44. 你好  
45. 你好  
46. 你好  
47. 你好  
48. 你好  
49. 你好  
50. 你好  
51. 你好  
52. 你好  
53. 你好  
54. 你好  
55. 你好  
56. 你好  
57. 你好  
58. 你好  
59. 你好  
60. 你好  
61. 你好  
62. 你好  
63. 你好  
64. 你好  
65. 你好  
66. 你好  
67. 你好  
68. 你好  
69. 你好  
70. 你好  
71. 你好  
72. 你好  
73. 你好  
74. 你好  
75. 你好  
76. 你好  
77. 你好  
78. 你好  
79. 你好  
80. 你好  
81. 你好  
82. 你好  
83. 你好  
84. 你好  
85. 你好  
86. 你好  
87. 你好  
88. 你好  
89. 你好  
90. 你好  
91. 你好  
92. 你好  
93. 你好  
94. 你好

## LEISURE AND SOCIALIZING

123

## 4 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

party 晚会  
wǎnhuìinvitation 邀请  
yāoqǐnggift 礼物  
lǐwù客人  
kèrén  
guest

**Read it** You now know the principle of how the Chinese script works and can recognize some basic recurring characters. You'll also find more information on pp.152-57 to further expand your understanding.

## 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Join in this conversation.

我们星期有一个 好。那太好了。  
晚会。你能来吗? hǎo, nà tài hǎo le  
wǒmen xīngqī yǒu yíge  
wǎnhuì. nǐ néng lái ma

We are having a party  
on Saturday. Are you  
free to come?

Say: Yes, how nice!

那太好了。 我们几点钟来呢?  
nà tài hǎo le wǒmen jǐ diǎnzhōng lái ne  
That's great!

Say: At what time  
should we arrive?

谢谢你的邀请。  
xièxiè nǐde yāoqǐng  
Thank you for  
inviting us.

## Instructions

Each exercise is numbered and introduced with instructions. In some cases, more information is given about the language point being covered.

## Read it

These panels explain how the Chinese script works, show useful signs, and give tips for deciphering Chinese characters.

## Read it

Chinese takes basic concepts and combines them to make different meanings, e.g.  
飞机 fēijī plane  
(flying 飞 fēi +  
machine 机 jī);  
火车 huǒchē train  
(fire 火 huǒ +  
vehicle 车 chē).

## Text styles

Chinese script and pinyin pronunciation are included, as well as the English translation.

## In conversation

Illustrated dialogues reflecting how vocabulary and phrases are used in everyday situations appear throughout the book.

## Say it

In these exercises, you are asked to apply the vocabulary you have learned in different contexts.

## 6

## Say it (2 minutes)

I'd like to go to the Summer Palace, please.

I'd like a taxi to the Forbidden City.


How do you get to Dongdan?



**Dictionary**  
A mini-dictionary provides ready reference from English to Chinese for 2,500 words.

**128 MENU GUIDE**

**MENU GUIDE**  
This guide lists the most common terms you may encounter on Chinese menus. Dishes are divided into categories and the Chinese script is displayed clearly to help you identify items on a menu.



**Rice and noodle dishes**

miànfáo	面条	noodles
mǐfàn	米饭	rice
nuómǐ	糯米	sticky rice
chǎofàn	炒饭	fried rice
dànchǎofàn	蛋炒饭	fried rice with egg
chǎomiàn	炒面	fried noodles
chǎomiǎn	炒米粉	fried rice noodles
zhōu	粥	rice porridge

**Basic food items**

chūnjuǎn	春卷	spring rolls
dòushābāo	豆沙包	steamed dumplings with sweet bean paste filling
huàjuǎn	花卷	steamed rolls
mǎntou	馒头	steamed bread

**Menu guide**  
Use this guide as a reference for identifying popular Chinese dishes.

## DICTIONARY English to Chinese

This dictionary contains the vocabulary from *15 Minute Chinese*, together with many other high frequency words. You can also find additional terms for food and drink in the Menu Guide (pp.128-137).

In Chinese, the plural of nouns is normally the same as the singular. Chinese descriptive words, or adjectives, may have different endings depending on how they are used and are also often preceded by *hěn* (very). Verbs have no tenses and don't generally change according to who or what is the subject; but there are some characters that can be added to indicate a particular time or mood—see p.112.

<b>A</b>			
a [ɑ:ni] yǐlǐ	always zhǒngqī	associate professor [cōllǐj]	dǎnshù jīnglǐ
accident shìgù	am: I am wǒ shì	America měiguó	asthma xiūchūnhēng
accountant kùnjìshì	American [pǎisən]	amīguó rén	at all
ache tǐng	and hé	animal dōngwù	at the café zài kǎfēi guǎn
actor gǎngyǎn	another [dǐfēncuò] líng yǐlǐ	(further) yǒu yǐlǐ	attractive měiméi
adapter (yǐng)	anniversary zhùniánrì	answering machine huídǎjī	August bāyuè
zhūānjī chǎobù	antibiotics kàngshēngjī	antique store gǔdòngquǎn	autism [mǎtérnāl] yǐnmǎ
address dǎhù	admission: admission	charge mǐngpǎofù	(external) gōngmǎ
adhesive bandages	admission ticket mǐngpǎo	after yǐhòu	Australian [dǎdǎyǐ] dǎdǎyǐdǎ
chūānjīkǎ	admission ticket mǐngpǎo	anything anything shíme?	awful zǒubùlě
admission: admission	afternoon xiàwǔ	apartment gōngyǐn, dànyuǎn	
charge mǐngpǎofù	again zài	apple píngguǒ	<b>B</b>
admission ticket mǐngpǎo	agenda huàlǐ / rìchēng	appointment book yuēhuì shù	baby yǐng'ér
after yǐhòu	air conditioning kōngtiáo	April sìyuè	baby wipes yǐng'ér cǎijīn
afternoon xiàwǔ	airport jīchǎng, fēijīchǎng	architecture (study) jiànzhùxué	back [bēck] bēi
again zài	alarm clock nǎozhōng	are you are nǐ shì	back street hòujī
agenda huàlǐ / rìchēng	all suǒyǒu	we are wǒmen shì	backpack bēibēi
air conditioning kōngtiáo	all the streets suǒyǒu de jiēdào	they are tāmen shì	bad huài
airport jīchǎng, fēijīchǎng	that's all, thanks hǎobēi, xièxiè	arrive dàodǎo	bag [bǎg] (for purchases, etc.) cāidān
alarm clock nǎozhōng	allergic guǎnmǐn	art yìshù	baggage xíngli
all suǒyǒu	almost chībùdào	astray yǐnlùguāng	bakery miànbāo, miànbāodǎn
all the streets suǒyǒu de jiēdào	alone dīndì	already yǐ jīng	bamboo shoots zhūcǎn
that's all, thanks hǎobēi, xièxiè	ask wèn		band [bænd] yuǎndài
they are tāmen shì			bandage bāngdāi



# How to use the audio app

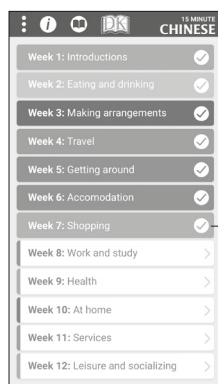
All the numbered exercises in each lesson, apart from the Warm-ups at the beginning and the Say it exercises at the end, have recorded audio, available via a free app. The app also includes a function to record yourself and listen to yourself alongside native speakers.

To start using the audio with the book, first download the **DK 15 Minute Language Course** app on your smartphone or tablet from the App Store or Google Play. Open the app and type in the book's ISBN (see page 1) to add it to your Library. As soon as the ISBN is recognized, the audio will download.

There are two ways in which you can use the audio. The first is to read through

your 15-minute lessons using the book only, and then go back and work with the audio and the book together, repeating the text in the gaps provided and then recording yourself. Or you can combine the book and the audio right from the beginning, pausing the app to read the instructions on the page as you need to. Try to say the words aloud, and practice enunciating properly. Detailed instructions on how to use the app are available from the menu bar in the app.

Remember that repetition is vital to language learning. The more often you listen to a conversation or repeat an oral exercise, the more the language will sink in.

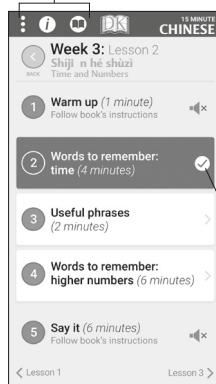


## 1 Getting started

The list of weeks will open when the audio has been downloaded. From here you can tap into each week's lessons.

When all the lessons in a week have been completed, the week button will be filled with color and show a check mark, so you can track your progress.

Menu, Help/How to Use, Your Library



## 2 Lessons week by week

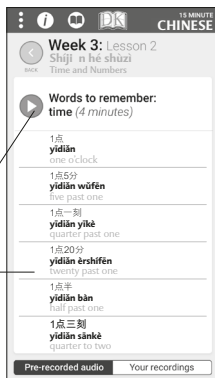
Each numbered exercise in a lesson is listed in the app as it appears in the book. Tap on an exercise to start.

A check mark indicates when an exercise has been completed.

## 3 Audio for exercises

Tap the play button to hear instructions, then the exercise. You can pause the audio at any point, and return to it.

You can tap any part of the exercise to play the audio from that point.

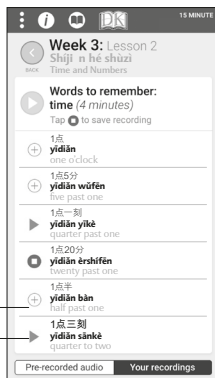


## 4 Record yourself

When you are in the **Your recordings** screen, you can record yourself reading the words or participating in the conversations with native speakers, then listen back (and rerecord if desired).

Add recording

Play recording



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

The warm-up panel appears at the beginning of each topic. Use it to reinforce what you have already learned and to prepare yourself for moving ahead with the new subject.

# NĪHǎO Hello

Chinese **gǒngshǒu** is famous: cupping one hand in the other in front of the chest, which is often accompanied with nodding or a slight bow. Traditionally, there would not be any contact in the form of a handshake or kisses, although this is changing with the increasing Western influence.

你好。  
*nīhǎo*  
Hello!



## 2 Words to remember (6 minutes)

Say these expressions aloud. Hide the text on the left with the cover flap and try to remember the Chinese for each. Check your answers.

早上好。 Good morning.  
*zǎoshàng hǎo*

晚上好。 Good evening.  
*wǎnshàng hǎo*

我的名字是... My name is...  
*wǒde míngzì shì...*

很高兴认识你。 Pleased to meet you.  
*hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ*

再见。 Goodbye.  
*zàijiàn*

晚安。 Good night.  
*wǎn'ān*

明天见。 See you tomorrow.  
*míngtiān jiàn*

## 3 In conversation: formal (3 minutes)



你好，我的名字是韩红。  
*nīhǎo, wǒde míngzì shì hánhóng*

Hello. My name is Han Hong.



你好，我的名字是罗伯特·巴克尔  
*nīhǎo, wǒde míngzì shì luóbótè-bākèěr*

Hello. My name is Robert Barker.



很高兴认识你。  
*hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ*

Pleased to meet you.

## 4 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese beside the pictures on the left and then follow the instructions to make your reply. Test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.



晚上好。晚上好。  
*wǎnshàng hǎo wǎnshàng hǎo*  
Good evening.

Say: Good evening.



我的名字是严俊盟。很高兴认识你。  
*wǒde míngzì shì yánjùnméng hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ*  
My name is Yan Junmeng.

Say: Pleased to meet you.

### Conversational tip

The Chinese usually introduce themselves using either just the family name—e.g. Han—or the family name followed by the given name—Han Hong. But they are used to hearing Western names the other way: Robert Barker. It's not common to ask someone their name directly, so listen carefully to the introductions.

When talking to or about others in an informal situation, **xiǎo** or **lǎo** is often added in front of their family name, depending on whether they are perceived to be younger or older than you. For example, if Han Hong appears younger or more junior, you'd call her/him **xiǎo hán**; if older or more senior, **lǎo hán** is used to show respect.

## 5 In conversation: informal (3 minutes)



明天见。  
*míngtiān jiàn*

See you tomorrow.



好，明天见。  
*hǎo, míngtiān jiàn*

Yes, see you tomorrow.



再见。  
*zàijiàn*

Goodbye.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "hello" and "goodbye" in Chinese. (pp.8-9)

Now say "My name is...." (pp.8-9)

Say "Pleased to meet you." (pp.8-9)

# WŌDE JIĀTÍNG

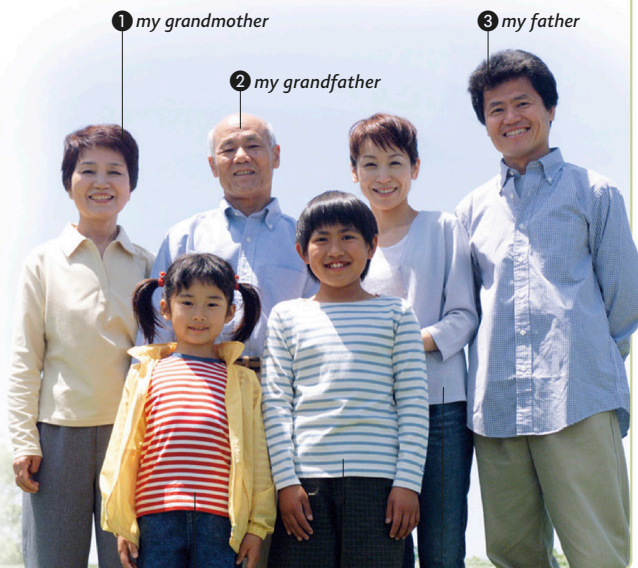
## My family

Chinese has two sets of vocabulary for many family members, depending on whether you are talking about your own or someone else's. This lesson focuses on speaking about your own family. There's often no need for a separate word meaning *my*: **bàba** means *my father*, **gēge** *my big brother*, etc.

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Look at the numbered family members in this scene and match them with the vocabulary list at the side. Read the Chinese words aloud. Now, hide the list with the cover flap and test yourself.

- ① 奶奶  
nǎinai
- ② 爷爷  
yéye
- ③ 爸爸  
bàba
- ④ 妈妈  
māma
- ⑤ 儿子  
érzi
- ⑥ 女儿  
nǚ'ér



⑥ my daughter

④ my mother

⑤ my son



**Conversational tip** Chinese distinguishes between *little* and *big* sister or brother. You will find all the relevant words in section 4. The phrase **xiōngdì jiěmèi** (siblings) is used to refer to your brothers and sisters as a group: **wǒ yǒu sì gè xiōngdì jiěmèi** (I have four siblings).

### 3 Words to remember: numbers (4 minutes)

Memorize these words and then test yourself using the cover flap.

The Chinese use a system of “classifiers” to count specific things. These vary with the nature of what is being counted. The numbers opposite use the near-universal classifier 个 **gè**. You can use this classifier when talking about your family, but it’s useful to recognize another classifier 人 **rén** used for people. (Note the alternative character 二 **èr** used for the number “two.”)

一人	yī rén	1 person
二人	èr rén	2 people
三人	sān rén	3 people
四人	sì rén	4 people
五人	wǔ rén	5 people
六人	liù rén	6 people
七人	qī rén	7 people
八人	bā rén	8 people
九人	jiǔ rén	9 people
十人	shí rén	10 people

one 一个  
yī gè

two 两个  
liǎng gè

three 三个  
sān gè

four 四个  
sì gè

five 五个  
wǔ gè

six 六个  
liù gè

seven 七个  
qī gè

eight 八个  
bā gè

nine 九个  
jiǔ gè

ten 十个  
shí gè

eleven 十一个  
shíyī gè

twelve 十二个  
shí'èr gè

### 4 Words to remember: relatives (5 minutes)

妻  
qī  
my wife

夫  
fū  
my husband



我们是夫妻。  
wǒmen shì fūqī  
We're married.  
("We're husband and wife.")

Look at these words and say them aloud. Hide the text on the right with the cover flap and try to remember the Chinese. Check your answers and repeat, if necessary. Then practice the phrases below.

my big sister/ 姐姐 / 妹妹  
my little sister jiějie/mèimei

my big brother/ 哥哥 / 弟弟  
my little brother gēge/didi

my siblings 兄弟姐妹  
xiōngdì jiěmèi

This is my wife. 这是我的妻子。  
zhè shì wǒde qīzi

I have four children. 我有四个孩子。  
wǒ yǒu sìgè hái zi

I have three daughters. 我有三个女儿。  
wǒ yǒu sāngè nǚ'ér



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say the Chinese for as many members of (your own) family as you can. (pp.10-11)

Say "I have two sons." (pp.10-11)

# NǐDE JIĀTÍNG

## Your relatives

Chinese pronouns are straightforward: *I* or *me* is **wǒ**, *you* is **nǐ** (or the more formal **nín**), and *he/she* or *him/her* is **tā**. The plural equivalents are made by adding **-men**: we **wǒmen**, you (plural) **nǐmen**, they **tāmen**; and the possessives by adding **-de**: my/mine **wǒ-de**, your/yours **nǐ-de**, their/theirs **tāmen-de**, etc.

## 2 Words to remember (5 minutes)

Here are the more respectful terms used to refer to someone else's family, or sometimes to your own in more formal situations.

母亲 mother  
mǔqīn

父亲 father  
fùqīn

儿子 son  
érzi

女儿 daughter  
nǚ'ér

妻子 wife  
qīzi

丈夫 husband  
zhàngfu

孩子 children  
háizi

兄弟姐妹 siblings  
xiōngdì jiěmèi



这是你的母亲吗?  
zhè shì nǐde mǔqīn ma  
Is this your mother?

## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



这是你的丈夫吗?  
zhè shì nǐde zhàngfu ma  
Is this your husband?



是的。这是我的父亲。  
shìde. zhè shì wǒde fùqīn  
That's right. And this is my father.



你有孩子吗?  
nǐ yǒu háizi ma  
Do you have any children?





**Conversational tip** Forming a question in Chinese is straightforward. Generally, you add the question marker **ma** (吗) to the end of a sentence: **nà shì nǐ-de érzi** (That's your son); **nà shì nǐ-de érzi ma?** (Is that your son?). In very informal spoken Chinese, the question marker is sometimes even dropped: **nà shì nǐ-de érzi?**

#### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Read these phrases aloud several times and try to memorize them. Conceal the Chinese with the cover flap and test yourself.



Do you have any siblings? (formal) 您有兄弟姐妹吗?  
*nín yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma*

Do you have any siblings? (informal) 你有兄弟姐妹吗?  
*nǐ yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma*



Is this your father? 这是你爸爸吗?  
*zhè shì nǐ bàba ma*

Is that your son? (formal) 那是您的儿子吗?  
*nà shì nín de érzi ma*



This is Han Hong's daughter. 这是韩红的女儿。  
*zhè shì hánhóng de nǚ'ér*

Is that your little sister? (informal) 那是你的妹妹吗?  
*nà shì nǐ de mèimei ma*



没有。但我有一个妹妹。  
*méi yǒu. dàn wǒ yǒu yīgè mèimei*

No, but I have a little sister.

#### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Is this your wife?

Is that your little brother?

Do you have a son? (informal)

This is Han Hong's mother.



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say “See you tomorrow.”  
(pp.8-9)

Say “We’re married”  
(pp.10-11) and  
“Is this your wife?”  
(pp.12-13)

# SHÌ/YǒU

## To be/to have

The most common verb in Chinese is **shì**, meaning *is, are, or am*. The **i** is pronounced only slightly, often making the word sound more like **shuh**. **shì** does not change with the subject (*I, he, we, etc.*): **wǒ shì luóbótè** (*I’m Robert*), **tā shì yīshēng** (*He/she is a doctor*), **wǒ-men shì zhōngguó rén** (*We’re Chinese*).

## 2 Useful phrases with shì (2 minutes)

Notice that nationalities are expressed by using the name of the country followed by 人 **rén** (*person/people*): **zhōngguó rén** Chinese (literally “China land person/people”), **měiguó rén** American (“America land person/people”).

我是中国人。 I’m Chinese.  
**wǒ shì zhōngguó rén**

现在是10点钟。 It’s ten o’clock.  
**xiànzài shì shí diǎnzhōng**

你是医生吗? Are you a doctor?  
**nǐ shì yīshēng ma**

韩红是学生。 Han Hong is a student.  
**hánhóng shì xuéshēng**



## Read it

It’s not as difficult to begin deciphering the Chinese script as it may appear. *15 Minute Mandarin Chinese* shows “simplified” characters as used in mainland China. These characters consist of a number of strokes ranging from one to more than twenty (一, 二, 三, 四; one, two, three, four, etc.), similar to how an English word is made up of a number of letters. Some basic concepts are represented by a single character—e.g. 我 **wǒ** (*I/me*), 人 **rén** (*person*)—and these are the common characters you can learn to recognize first. Many other concepts are represented by a combination of characters, e.g. 英国人 **yīng-guó rén** (*ying-land person, i.e. English*). You’ll find more details on pp.152-59.



我是英国人。  
**wǒ shì yīngguó rén**  
I’m English.

### 3 Useful phrases: talking about what you have (5 minutes)

An informal and straightforward way to talk about possession is to use the expression 有 **yǒu**, meaning *have* or *has*. Learn these phrases and then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.



你有名片吗?  
*nǐ yǒu míngpiàn ma*  
Do you have a business card?

I have three children. 我有三个孩子。  
*wǒ yǒu sāngè hái zi*

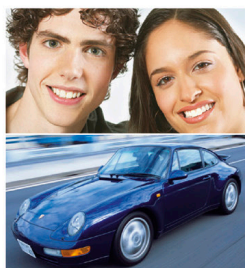
My son has a car. 我的儿子有车。  
*wǒ de ér zi yǒu chē*

I have a little sister. 我有一个妹妹。  
*wǒ yǒu yí gè mèi mei*

Do you have any children? 你有孩子吗?  
*nǐ yǒu hái zi ma*

### 4 Negatives (3 minutes)

There are two principal ways to make a negative sentence in Chinese: by using the negative markers 不 **bú** or 没 **méi** in front of a verb. **bú** is often used with **shì**, and **méi** with **yǒu**.



We're not American. 我们不是美国人。  
*wǒ men bú shì měi guó rén*

I don't have a car. 我没有车。  
*wǒ méi yǒu chē*

### 5 Put into practice (4 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese beside the pictures on the left and then follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.



晚上好。 晚上好, 我是罗伯特。  
*wǎn shàng hǎo wǎn shàng hǎo, wǒ shì luó bó tè*  
Good evening.

Say: Good evening.  
I'm Robert.

很高兴认识你。 你有名片吗?  
*hěn gāo xìng rèn shi nǐ nǐ yǒu míng piàn ma*  
Pleased to meet you.

Ask: Do you have a business card?

## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

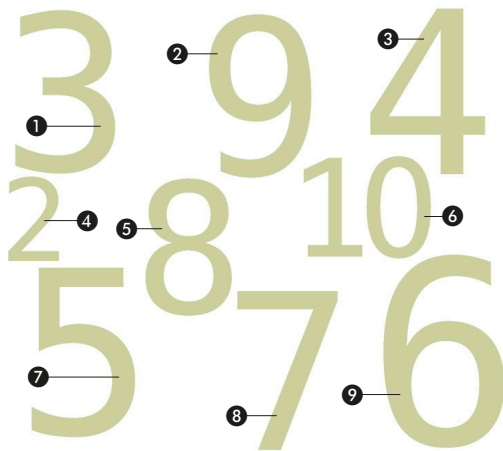
FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ  
Review and repeat

## 1 How many?

- ① 三  
sān
- ② 九  
jiǔ
- ③ 四  
sì
- ④ 二  
èr
- ⑤ 八  
bā
- ⑥ 十  
shí
- ⑦ 五  
wǔ
- ⑧ 七  
qī
- ⑨ 六  
liù

## 1 How many? (2 minutes)

Hide the answers with the cover flap. Then say these Chinese numbers aloud. Check that you have remembered the Chinese correctly.



## 2 Hello

- ① 你好, 我的名字是...  
nǐhǎo, wǒde míngzi shì...
- ② 很高兴认识你。  
hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ
- ③ 我有三个儿子。  
你有孩子吗?  
wǒ yǒu sāngè érzi.  
nǐ yǒu háiizi ma
- ④ 再见。  
zàijiàn

## 2 Hello (4 minutes)

You meet someone in a formal situation. Join in the conversation, replying in Chinese following the English prompts.

nǐhǎo, wǒde míngzi shì Yan Junmeng

- ① Answer the greeting and give your name.

zhè shì wǒde qīzi

- ② Say "Pleased to meet you."

nǐ yǒu háiizi ma

- ③ Say "I have three sons. Do you have any children?"

méi yǒu. dàn wǒ yǒu yīgè dìdi

- ④ Say "Goodbye."



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 3 Be or have (5 minutes)

Fill in the blanks with **shì** (to be) or **yǒu** (to have). Then check your answers carefully.

- ① wǒ \_\_\_\_ zhōngguó rén
- ② wǒ \_\_\_\_ sāngè érzi
- ③ wǒmen \_\_\_\_ yīngguó rén
- ④ Sarah \_\_\_\_ yīshēng
- ⑤ nǐ \_\_\_\_ háizi ma
- ⑥ tā bú \_\_\_\_ xuéshēng
- ⑦ wǒde míngzì \_\_\_\_ Han Hong
- ⑧ wǒmen méi \_\_\_\_ chē

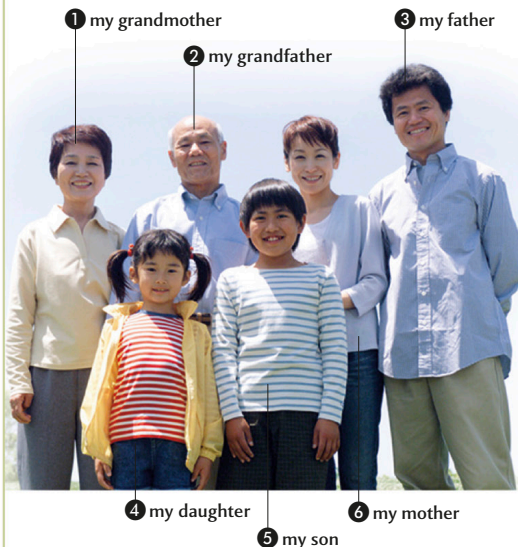


## 3 Be or have

- ① 是 shì
- ② 有 yǒu
- ③ 是 shì
- ④ 是 shì
- ⑤ 有 yǒu
- ⑥ 是 shì
- ⑦ 是 shì
- ⑧ 有 yǒu

## 4 Family (4 minutes)

Say the Chinese for each of the numbered family members. Check your answers carefully.



## 4 Family

- ① 奶奶 nǎinai
- ② 爷爷 yéye
- ③ 爸爸 bàba
- ④ 女儿 nǚ'ér
- ⑤ 儿子 érzi
- ⑥ 妈妈 māma



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Count up to ten.  
(pp.10-11)

Remind yourself how  
to say “hello” and  
“goodbye.” (pp.8-9)

Ask “Do you have  
any children?” (pp.14-15)

# ZÀI KĀFĒI TĪNG

## In the café

You will find different types of cafés in China: there are traditional types, which are called **cháguǎn**; and Western-style coffee houses, simply called **kāfēi tīng**. These modern cafés are very popular, particularly among young Chinese.

## 2 Words to remember (5 minutes)

Look at the words below and say them out loud a few times. Conceal the Chinese with the cover flap and try to remember each one in turn. Also practice the words on the right.

绿茶 **green tea**  
*lǜchá*

红茶 **red tea**  
*hóngchá*

花茶 **jasmine tea**  
*huāchá*

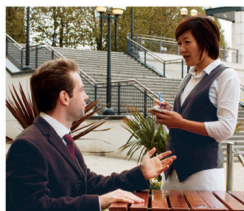
三明治 **sandwich**  
*sānmíngzhì*

奶茶  
*nǎichá*  
tea with  
milk



**Cultural tip** The generic word for tea is **chá**. Three popular types are **lǜchá** (green tea—popular in eastern China), **hóngchá** (red tea—southern China), and **huāchá** (jasmine tea—northern China).

## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



请给我一杯咖啡。  
*qǐng gěi wǒ yībēi kāfēi*  
I'd like a coffee.



还要其它食品吗？  
*hāiyào qítā shípín ma*  
Anything else?



有蛋糕吗？  
*yǒu dànɡāo ma*  
Do you have any cakes?



## 4 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Learn these phrases. Read the English under the pictures and say the phrase in Chinese as shown on the right. Then cover up the answers on the right and test yourself.

蛋糕  
dàngāo  
cake



请给我一杯咖啡。  
qǐng gěi wǒ yībēi kāfēi

I'd like a coffee.



还要其它食品吗?  
hái yào qítā shípǐn ma

Anything else?



还要一块蛋糕。  
hái yào yíkuài dàngāo

A cake, too, please.



多少钱?  
duōshǎo qián

How much is that?

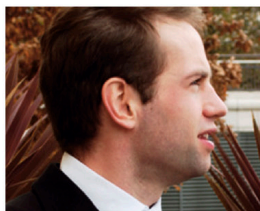
糖  
táng  
sugar

咖啡  
kāfēi  
coffee



有, 当然有。  
yǒu, dāngrán yǒu

Yes, certainly.



还要一块蛋糕。多少钱?  
hái yào yíkuài dàngāo.  
duōshǎo qián

A cake, too, please.  
How much is that?



50元...谢谢你。  
wǔshí yuán ...xièxie nǐ

That's 50 yuan...  
thank you.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "A coffee, please."  
(pp.18-19)

Say "I don't have a car."  
(pp.14-15)

Ask "Do you have any  
cakes?" (pp.18-19)

# ZÀI CĀNGUǎN

## In the restaurant

There are different types of places to eat in China. You can find snacks or a light meal at street stalls. A *fànguǎn* serves traditional Chinese food. Department stores often have relaxed *cāntīng* (canteens) on the upper floors, open until about 10 p.m. and serving both international and Chinese dishes.

## 2 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

菜单 menu  
*càidān*

酒水单 wine list  
*jiǔshuǐdān*

头盘 appetizers  
*tóupán*

主食 entrées  
*zhǔshí*

甜点 desserts  
*tiándiǎn*

早餐 breakfast  
*zǎocān*

午餐 lunch  
*wǔcān*

晚餐 dinner  
*wǎncān*



## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



请给我们安排一张四人餐桌。  
*qǐng gěi wǒmen ānpái yī zhāng sì rén cānzhuō*

We'd like a table for four.



你们有预订吗?  
*nǐmen yǒu yùdìng ma*

Do you have a reservation?



有。是巴克尔预订的。  
*yǒu. shì bākè'ěr yùdìng de*

Yes, I do. In the name of Barker.



#### 4 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Look at the numbered items in this table setting and match them with the Chinese words on the right. Read the Chinese words aloud. Now, conceal the Chinese with the cover flap and test yourself.

- ① 酒杯  
*jiǔbēi*
- ② 碗  
*wǎn*
- ③ 餐碟  
*cāndíe*
- ④ 叉子  
*chāzi*
- ⑤ 调羹  
*tiáogēng*
- ⑥ 筷子  
*kuàizi*
- ⑦ 毛巾  
*máojīn*

#### 5 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Practice these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the Chinese.

What type of noodles do you have? 你们供应哪些面条?  
*nǐmen gōngyīng nǎxiē miàntiáo*

Where can I pay? 在哪儿付钱?  
*zài nǎ fùqián*



您想坐在哪里?  
*nín xiǎng zuòzài nǎlǐ*

Where would you like to sit?



靠窗坐。  
*kào chuāng zuò*

Near a window, please.



好吧, 这边请。  
*hǎoba. zhèbiān qǐng*

Very well. Here you are.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say “We’re married” (pp.10-11) and “I’m English.” (pp.14-15)

Ask “Do you have any siblings?” (pp.12-13)

Say “A sandwich, please.” (pp.18-19)

# CÀIYÁO

## Dishes

A typical meal in China consists of rice and a soup, together with a variety of fish, meat, and vegetable dishes. The meal is served with pickles and other condiments, such as raw scallions and chili sauce, depending on the region. Alcohol is consumed before the rice or noodles are served.



**Cultural tip** *Taocan* (set menus) are popular, particularly at lunchtime. These consist of a soup, rice, pickles, and other dishes—all presented on a tray. *gàijiāofàn* (rice with toppings) are a simpler alternative.

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Look at the numbered items and match them to the Chinese words in the panel on the left.

- ① 水果  
shuǐguǒ
- ② 蔬菜  
shūcài
- ③ 面条  
miàntiáo
- ④ 海鲜  
hǎixiān
- ⑤ 汤  
tāng
- ⑥ 肉  
ròu
- ⑦ 鱼  
yú
- ⑧ 蘑菇  
mógū
- ⑨ 米饭  
mǐfàn





### 3 Words to remember: cooking methods (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.



你们供应哪些肉?  
*nǐmen gōngyīng nǎxiē ròu*  
 What type of meat  
 do you have?

fried 炒  
*chǎo*

grilled 烧  
*shāo*

roasted 烤  
*kǎo*

boiled 煮  
*zhǔ*

steamed 蒸  
*zhēng*

raw 生吃  
*shēngchī*

### 6 Say it (2 minutes)

What's "Nuomi"?

I'd like a baijiu.

What type of fish do  
 you have?

2 vegetables



noodles 3



4 seafood

### 4 Words to remember: drinks (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

water 水  
*shuǐ*

mineral water 矿泉水  
*kuàngquánshuǐ*

"baijiu" (Chinese  
 liquor/spirit) 白酒  
*báijiǔ*

wine 葡萄酒  
*pútáojiǔ*

beer 啤酒  
*píjiǔ*

fruit juice 果汁  
*guǒzhī*

### 5 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Practice these phrases and then test yourself.

I'd like a beer. 请给我一杯啤酒。  
*qǐng gěiwǒ yībēi píjiǔ*

I'm vegetarian. 我是素食者。  
*wǒ shì sùshízhě*

I'm allergic to nuts. 我对坚果过敏。  
*wǒ duì jiānguǒ guòmǐn*

What's "Qianzhang"? 什么是千张?  
*shénme shì qiānzhāng*

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What are “breakfast,” “lunch,” and “dinner” in Chinese? (pp.20-21)

Say “I’m vegetarian” and “I’d like a fruit juice” in Chinese. (pp.22-23)

# QǐNGQIÚ

## Requests

You’ve learned two common phrases that are used for asking for something: **qǐng gěi wǒ...** (I’d like...) and **qǐng gěi wǒ men...** (We’d like...). Alternatively, you can say what you want followed by **hǎo ma** (please): **wǒ yào... hǎo ma** (I want..., please). You can use this phrase in almost any situation.

## 2 Basic requests (6 minutes)

Here are some phrases for making basic requests in Chinese using **qǐng gěi wǒ/gěi wǒ men...** and **wǒ yào... hǎo ma**. Learn these phrases and then test yourself by using the cover flap.

我要一个蛋糕，好吗？ I want a cake, please.  
**wǒ yào yīgè dàngāo, hǎo ma**

我要一个叉子，好吗？ I want a fork, please.  
**wǒ yào yīgè chāzi, hǎo ma**

请给我一杯茶。 I’d like a tea.  
**qǐng gěi wǒ yībēi chá**

请给我们安排一张三人餐桌。 We’d like a table for three.  
**qǐng gěi wǒ men ānpái yīzhāng sānrén cānzhuō**

请给我菜单。 I’d like the menu.  
**qǐng gěi wǒ càidān**

我要一点糖果，好吗？ I want some sweets, please.  
**wǒ yào yīdiǎn tángguǒ, hǎo ma**

给我加满，好吗？ Fill it up, please.  
**gěi wǒ jiā mǎn, hǎo ma** (“A full tank, please.”)



请给我接王先生的电话。  
**qǐng gěi wǒ jiē wángxiānsheng de diànhuà**  
I’d like to speak to Mr. Wang.



**Read it** Some Chinese characters are simple and resemble the item they describe, such as the character for people: 人 (**rén**). The PRC simplified the characters, although traditional versions are still used in some of the Chinese-speaking areas. The sign on the left is simplified characters, which say **tíngzhǐ yíngyè**, meaning business stopped, or closed.

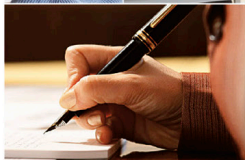


### 3 Polite requests (4 minutes)

In a business situation, you may want to appear ultra-polite by using the polite version of you—*nín* instead of *nǐ*—especially if talking to someone senior. Learn these phrases and then test yourself.



Would you please help me? 请您帮帮我，好吗？  
*qǐng nín bāngbang wǒ, hǎo ma*



Could I have your signature here, please? 请您在这里签名，好吗？  
*qǐng nín zài zhèlǐ qiānmíng, hǎo ma*



Could I have your phone number, please? 请把您的电话号码给我，好吗？  
*qǐng bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎ gěi wǒ, hǎo ma*

### 4 Put into practice (4 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese beside the pictures on the left and then follow the instructions to make your reply in Chinese. Test yourself by hiding the answers with the cover flap.



晚上好。你们有预订吗？ 没有。请给我们安排一张  
*wǎnshàng hǎo. nǐmen yǒu yùdìng ma* 三人餐桌。  
Good evening. *méi yǒu. qǐng gěi wǒmen*  
Do you have a reservation? *ānpái yīzhāng sānrén*  
*cānzhuō*

Say: No. We'd like a table for three.



您想喝什么饮料？ 请给我一杯啤酒。  
*nín xiǎng hē shénme yǐnliào* *qǐng gěi wǒ yībēi pījiǔ*  
What would you like to drink?

Say: I'd like a beer.

## dǎ àn

Answers Cover with flap

FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ  
Review and repeat

## 1 What food?

- 1 汤  
tāng
- 2 蔬菜  
shūcài
- 3 海鲜  
hǎixiān
- 4 肉  
ròu
- 5 酒杯  
jiǔbēi
- 6 米饭  
mǐfàn

## 1 What food? (4 minutes)

Name the numbered items in Chinese.



## 2 This is my...

- 1 这是我的丈夫。  
zhè shì wǒde zhàngfū
- 2 这是我的女儿。  
zhè shì wǒde nǚér
- 3 他们是我的兄弟  
姐妹。  
tāmen shì wǒde  
xiōngdì jiěmèi

## 2 This is my... (4 minutes)

Say these phrases in Chinese.

- 1 This is my husband.
- 2 This is my daughter.
- 3 These are my  
siblings.



## 3 I'd like...

- 1 请给我一个蛋糕。  
qǐng gěi wǒ yī gè  
dàngāo
- 2 请给我一点糖。  
qǐng gěi wǒ yī diǎn  
táng
- 3 请给我一杯咖啡。  
qǐng gěi wǒ yī bēi  
kāfēi
- 4 请给我一杯茶。  
qǐng gěi wǒ yī bēi chá

## 3 I'd like... (3 minutes)

Say "I'd like" the following in Chinese:



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap



## 1 What food?

- 7 筷子  
kuàizi
- 8 面条  
miàntiáo
- 9 毛巾  
máojīn
- 10 啤酒  
píjiǔ

## 4 Restaurant (4 minutes)

You arrive at a restaurant. Join in the conversation, replying in Chinese wherever you see the English prompts.

wǎnshàng hǎo

- ① Ask “Do you have a table for three?”  
nǐmen yǒu yùdìng ma
- ② Say “Yes, we do. In the name of Barker.”  
nín xiǎng zuòzài nǎlǐ
- ③ Say “Near a window, please.”  
hǎoba. zhèbiān qǐng
- ④ Say “We’d like the menu, please.”  
háyào qítā shípǐn ma
- ⑤ Ask “Do you have a wine list?”



## 4 Restaurant

- ① 有三个人的桌子吗?  
yǒu sāngèrén de zhuōzi ma
- ② 有。是巴克尔预定的。  
yǒu. shì bākè'ěr yùdìng de
- ③ 我们想要非抽烟区。  
wǒmen xiǎngyào fēi chōuyānqū
- ④ 请给我们菜单, 好吗?  
qǐng gěiwǒmen càidān, hǎo ma
- ⑤ 有酒水单吗?  
yǒu jiǔshuǐ dān ma

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

How do you say "I have four children"? (pp.10-11)

Now say "We're not English" and "I don't have a car." (pp.14-15)

What is Chinese for "my mother"? (pp.10-11)

# RÌQÍ HÉ YUÈFÈN

## Days and months

The most important holiday of the year is the one-week Chinese New Year, which usually happens in early February. Two other long holidays are May 1 (International Labor Day) and October 1 (Chinese National Day), which also last for five days. Christmas isn't generally celebrated.

## 2 Words to remember: days of the week (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

星期一 Monday  
*xīngqīyī*

星期二 Tuesday  
*xīngqī'èr*

星期三 Wednesday  
*xīngqīsān*

星期四 Thursday  
*xīngqīsi*

星期五 Friday  
*xīngqīwǔ*

星期六 Saturday  
*xīngqīliù*

星期日 Sunday  
*xīngqīrì*

今天 today  
*jīntiān*

明天 tomorrow  
*míngtiān*

昨天 yesterday  
*zuótiān*



明天见。  
*míngtiānjiàn*  
We meet tomorrow.



我今天有预订。  
*wǒ jīntiān yǒu yùdìng*  
I have a reservation for today.

## 3 Useful phrases: days (2 minutes)

There is no Chinese equivalent of *on* or *in*, as in *on Tuesday*, *in February*.

会议不是星期二。 The meeting isn't  
*huìyì bú shì xīngqī'èr* on Tuesday.

我星期日工作。 I work on Sundays.  
*wǒ xīngqīrì gōngzuò*



## 4 Words to remember: months of the year (5 minutes)

Chinese months are named simply  
“1 month,” “2 month,” etc.



我们的结婚周年是七月。  
*wǒmen de jiéhūn zhōunián shì qīyuè*  
Our anniversary is in July.



中国春节是二月。  
*Zhōngguó chūnjié shì èryuè*  
Chinese New Year is in February.

January 一月  
*yīyuè*

February 二月  
*èryuè*

March 三月  
*sānyuè*

April 四月  
*sìyuè*

May 五月  
*wǔyuè*

June 六月  
*liùyuè*

July 七月  
*qīyuè*

August 八月  
*bāyuè*

September 九月  
*jiǔyuè*

October 十月  
*shíyuè*

November 十一月  
*shíyīyuè*

December 十二月  
*shí'èryuè*

next month 下个月  
*xiàgèyuè*

last month 上个月  
*shànggèyuè*

## 5 Useful phrases: months (2 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using  
the cover flap.

My children are on  
vacation in August. 我的孩子八月放假。  
*wǒde háizi bāyuè fàngjià*



My birthday is  
in June. 我的生日是六月。  
*wǒde shēngrì shì liùyuè*



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Count in Chinese from one to twelve. (pp.10-11)

Say “Do you have a reservation?” (pp.20-21)

Say “The meeting isn’t on Wednesday.” (pp.28-29)

# SHÍJIĀN HÉ SHÙZÌ

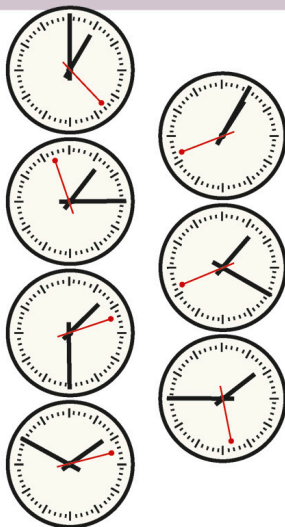
## Time and numbers

When telling time in Chinese, the hour comes first—for example, *yīdiǎn* (one o’clock), *jiǔdiǎn* (nine o’clock), etc., followed by the minutes: *wǔfēn* (five minutes), *shífēn* (ten minutes). *bàn* is “a half” (30 minutes), *yīkè* “a quarter” (15 minutes), and *sānkè* “three-quarters” (45 minutes).

## 2 Words to remember: time (4 minutes)

Memorize how to tell time in Chinese.

1点 <i>yīdiǎn</i>	one o’clock
1点5分 <i>yīdiǎn wǔfēn</i>	five past one
1点一刻 <i>yīdiǎn yīkè</i>	quarter past one
1点20分 <i>yīdiǎn èrshífēn</i>	twenty past one
1点半 <i>yīdiǎn bàn</i>	half past one
1点三刻 <i>yīdiǎn sānkè</i>	quarter to two (“one and three-quarters”)
2点差10分 <i>liǎngdiǎn chà shífēn</i>	ten to two



## 3 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

现在几点了? What time is it?  
*xiànzài jǐ diǎn le*

你几点想吃早餐? At what time do you  
want breakfast?  
*nǐ jǐ diǎn xiǎng chī zǎocān*

我有一个12点的预订。 I have a reservation for  
twelve o’clock.  
*wǒ yǒu yīgè shí’èr diǎn de yùdìng*



## 4 Words to remember: higher numbers (6 minutes)

Chinese numbers are very logical. To count above 10, the individual numbers are simply added together. So 11 is *shíyī* ("ten-one"), 15 is *shíwǔ* ("ten-five"), etc. Be careful, though, to put the numbers the right way around: *wǔshí* is 50 ("five-ten"), *qīshí* is 70 ("seven-ten"). Units are added directly after the tens: 68 is *liùshí bā*; 25 is *èrshí wǔ*, etc.

Pay special attention to the number 10,000, which is *wàn* or *yīwàn*. A million is *yībǎiwàn* ("one hundred-ten thousands").



这是五百元。  
*zhè shì wǔbǎi yuán*  
That's 500 yuan.

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

twenty-five  
ninety-two  
seven hundred  
twenty thousand  
five to ten  
half past eleven  
That's 75 yuan.

eleven 十一  
*shíyī*

twelve 十二  
*shí'èr*

thirteen 十三  
*shí sān*

fourteen 十四  
*shí sì*

fifteen 十五  
*shíwǔ*

sixteen 十六  
*shí liù*

seventeen 十七  
*shíqī*

eighteen 十八  
*shí bā*

nineteen 十九  
*shíjiǔ*

twenty 二十  
*èrshí*

thirty 三十  
*sānshí*

forty 四十  
*sìshí*

fifty 五十  
*wǔshí*

sixty 六十  
*liùshí*

seventy 七十  
*qīshí*

eighty 八十  
*bāshí*

ninety 九十  
*jiǔshí*

one hundred 一百  
*yībǎi*

three hundred 三百  
*sānbǎi*

one thousand 一千  
*yīqiān*

ten thousand 一万  
*yīwàn*

two hundred thousand 二十万  
*èrshíwàn*

one million 一百万  
*yībǎiwàn*

# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say the days of the week. (pp.28-29)

Say "three o'clock." (pp.30-31)

What is "today," "tomorrow," and "yesterday" in Chinese? (pp.28-29)

# YÙYUÈ Appointments

There's no fundamental difference when it comes to making an appointment and meeting someone for the first time. If it's a business meeting, people do exchange business cards first. When you do so, remember to hand over your business card with both hands.

# 2 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

我们明天见，好吗？  
*wǒmen míngtiān jiàn, hǎo ma* Shall we meet tomorrow?

和谁？  
*hé shéi* With whom?

您什么时候有空？  
*nín shénme shíhòu yǒukòng* When are you free?

对不起，那天我很忙。  
*duìbuqǐ, nàtiān wǒ hěn máng* Sorry, I'm busy that day.

星期四怎么样？  
*xīngqīsì zěnmeyàng* How about Thursday?

对我正合适。  
*duì wǒ zhèng héshì* That's good for me.



欢迎。  
*huānyíng*  
Welcome.

# 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



你好，我有预约。  
*nǐhǎo, wǒ yǒu yùyuē*

Hello. I have an appointment.



和谁？  
*hé shéi*

With whom?



与王先生。  
*yǔ wángxiānsheng*

With Mr. Wang.

## 4 Put into practice (5 minutes)

Practice these phrases. Then cover up the text on the right and say the answering part of the dialogue in Chinese. Check your answers and repeat, if necessary.



我们星期四见面，好吗？  
wǒmen xīngqīsi jiànmiàn, hǎo ma  
对不起，那天我很忙。  
duìbuqǐ, nàtiān wǒ hěn máng

Shall we meet on Thursday?

Say: Sorry, I'm busy that day.



您什么时候有空？  
nín shénme shíhòu yǒukòng  
星期二下午我有空。  
xīngqī'èr xiàwǔ wǒ yǒukòng  
When are you free?

Say: On Tuesday in the afternoon.



对我正合适。  
duì wǒ zhèng héshì  
什么时间呢？  
shénme shíjiān ne  
That's good for me.

Ask: At what time?

**Read it** It's useful to recognize some common Chinese signs you might see around a building. The signs below are a combination of characters. The final character in each (处 *chù*) means *place* or *location*.

接待处

jiē dài chù  
(reception)

问讯处

wèn xún chù  
(information desk)



很好。约的是什么时候？  
hěn hǎo. yuē de shì shénme shíjiān

Very good. What time is the appointment?



十点钟。  
shí diǎn zhōng

At ten o'clock.



请坐吧。  
qǐng zuò ba

Take a seat, please.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

How do you say “sorry”?  
(pp.32-33)

Ask “Shall we meet  
tomorrow?” (pp.32-33)

Say “I’d like a cake,  
please.” (pp.24-25)

# Dǎ DIÀNHUÀ On the telephone

The Chinese usually answer the telephone with **wéi** (hello), although sometimes **nǐhǎo** can also be used. You should not use **wéi** for face-to-face greetings. If you are planning to make a lot of calls while in China, the most cost-effective option is to buy a Chinese SIM card or a cell phone with a top-up SIM, available from a cell phone carrier service center.

## 2 Match and repeat (6 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the Chinese in the panel on the left and test yourself.

- 1 充电器  
chōngdiànqì
- 2 电话机  
diànhuàjī
- 3 留言机  
liúyánjī
- 4 SIM 卡  
SIM kǎ
- 5 手机  
shǒujī
- 6 耳机  
ěrjī



## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



喂，我是总机。  
wéi, wǒ shì zǒngjī

Hello, operator speaking.  
("I am the operator.")



喂，请给我接王先生的电话。  
wéi, qǐng gěi wǒ jiē  
wángxiānsheng de diànhuà

Hello, I'd like to speak  
to Mr. Wang.



您是谁呀？  
nín shì shéi ya

Who's calling?



## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Practice these phrases. Then test yourself using the cover flap.



我想买张 SIM 卡, 好吗。  
wǒ xiǎng mǎi zhāng SIM  
kǎ, hǎo ma  
I want to buy a SIM card,  
please.



我想要陈女士的号码。  
wǒ xiǎngyào chén nǚshì  
de hàomǎ

I'd like the number for Ms. Chen.



请给我接王先生的电话。  
qǐng gěi wǒ jiē  
wángxiānsheng de  
diànhuà

I'd like to speak to  
Mr. Wang, please.



我可以给他留言吗?  
wǒ kěyǐ gěi tā liúyán ma

Can I leave a message?



对不起, 我打错了电话了。  
duìbuqǐ, wǒ dǎ cuò  
diànhuà le

Sorry, I have the  
wrong number.

3 answering  
machine



我是大通印刷厂的张兴良。  
wǒ shì dàtōng  
yìnshuāchǎng de  
zhāngxīngliáng

I'm Zhang Xingliang from  
Tatong Printing.



对不起, 电话占线。  
duìbuqǐ, diànhuà zhànxiàn  
I'm sorry, the line  
is busy.



可不可以让王先生给  
我回电话?  
kě bù kěyǐ ràng  
wángxiānsheng gěi wǒ huí  
diànhuà

Can you ask Mr. Wang  
to call me back?

## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

FÙXÍ YŮ LIÀNXÍ  
Review and repeat

## 1 Sums

- ① 十六  
shíliù
- ② 三十九  
sānshíjiǔ
- ③ 五十三  
wǔshísān
- ④ 七十八  
qīshíbā
- ⑤ 九十九  
jiǔshíjiǔ
- ⑥ 十七  
shíqī

## 1 Sums (4 minutes)

Speak out loud the answers to these sums in Chinese. Then check your answers.

- ①  $10 + 6 = ?$
- ②  $14 + 25 = ?$
- ③  $66 - 13 = ?$
- ④  $40 + 38 = ?$
- ⑤  $90 + 9 = ?$
- ⑥  $20 - 3 = ?$

## 3 Telephones (3 minutes)

What are the numbered items in Chinese?



## 2 To want

- ① 请  
qǐng
- ② 好  
hǎo
- ③ 茶  
chá
- ④ 给我  
gěi wǒ
- ⑤ 我  
wǒ
- ⑥ 电话  
diànhuà

## 2 To want (3 minutes)

Fill in the blanks in these requests with the correct word.

- ① \_\_\_\_ gěi wǒ yībēi píjiǔ
- ② wǒ yào yīgè dàngāo, \_\_\_\_ ma
- ③ qǐng gěi wǒ yībēi nǎi \_\_\_\_
- ④ qǐng \_\_\_\_ jiē wàixiàn
- ⑤ \_\_\_\_ yào mǎi diànhuà kǎ, hǎo ma
- ⑥ qǐng gěi wǒ jiē wáng xiānsheng de \_\_\_\_





dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 3 Telephones

- ① 手机  
shǒujī
- ② SIM 卡  
SIM kǎ
- ③ 电话机  
diànhuàjī
- ④ 留言机  
liúyánjī
- ⑤ 耳机  
ěrjī

## 4 When? (2 minutes)

What do these sentences mean?

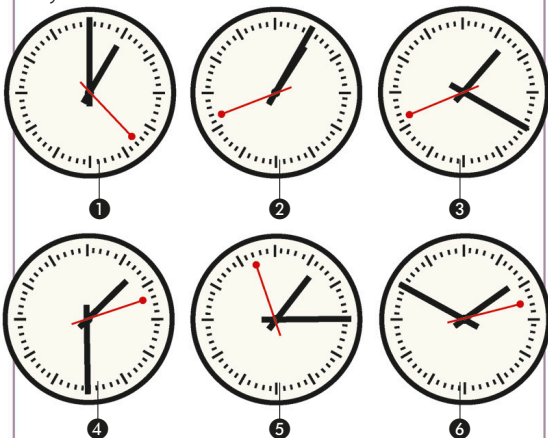
- ① míngtiān jiàn
- ② wǒ xīngqīliù gōngzuò
- ③ wǒ de shēngrì shì wǔyuè
- ④ wǒ jīntiān yǒu dìngtái

## 4 When?

- ① We meet/see you tomorrow.
- ② I work on Saturday.
- ③ My birthday is in May.
- ④ I have a reservation for today.

## 5 Time (3 minutes)

Say these times in Chinese.



## 5 Time

- ① 1点  
yīdiǎn
- ② 1点5分  
yīdiǎn wǔfēn
- ③ 1点20分  
yīdiǎn èrshífēn
- ④ 1点半  
yīdiǎn bàn
- ⑤ 1点一刻  
yīdiǎn yīkè
- ⑥ 2点差10分  
liǎngdiǎn chà shífēn

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Count to 100 in tens.  
(pp.10-11 and pp.30-31)

Ask "What time is it?"  
(pp.30-31)

Say "half past one."  
(pp.30-31)

# ZÀI HUǒCHĒ ZHÀN

## At the train station

Each type of train service in China has a unique reference. This consists of an English letter followed by a number, which indicates the route and class. Generally, services beginning with Z are the fastest, nonstop trains, while K or T indicates express long-distance trains, stopping only at major stations.

## 2 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Learn these words and then test yourself.

车站 station  
*chēzhàn*

火车 train  
*huǒchē*

站台 platform  
*zhàntái*

车票 ticket  
*chēpiào*

单程票 one way  
*dānchéngpiào*

往返票 round trip  
*wǎngfǎnpào*

硬卧车厢 sleeper car  
*yìngwò chēxiāng*

普通车厢 ordinary car  
*pǔtōng chēxiāng*

出入口  
*chūrùkǒu*  
entry/exit

乘客  
*chéngkè*  
passenger



车站很拥挤。  
*chēzhàn hěn yōngjǐ*  
The station is crowded.

## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



我想买两张去北京的车票？  
*wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎngzhāng qù běijīng de chēpiào*

Can I buy two tickets to Beijing, please?



往返票吗？  
*wǎngfǎnpào ma*

Is that round trip?



是的。我需要确定座位吗？  
*shìde. wǒ xūyào quèdìng zuòwèi ma*

Yes. Do I need to make seat reservations?

## 4 Useful phrases (5 minutes)



去上海的火车晚点了。  
*qù shànghǎi de huǒchē wǎndiǎn le*  
The train to Shanghai is late.

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

How much is a ticket to Shanghai? 去上海的车票多少钱?  
*qù shànghǎi de chēpiào duōshǎo qián*

Can I use a credit card? 可以用信用卡吗?  
*kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma*

Do I have to change trains? 需要换车吗?  
*xūyào huànchē ma*

Which platform does the train leave from? 从第几站台上车?  
*cóng dì jǐ zhàntái shàngchē*

What time does the train leave? 火车几点发车?  
*huǒchē jǐdiǎn fāchē*



## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

The train is crowded.  
How much is a ticket to Beijing?

**Cultural tip** You can normally buy your train tickets in advance from your hotel by paying a small handling fee. If this service is not available at your hotel, you can visit a travel agency or the station to buy tickets. You will need to pay in cash at the station. There are a few places where you can buy tickets from a machine.



不需要。总共100元。  
*bù xūyào. zǒnggòng yībǎi yuán*

No. That's 100 yuan.



可以用信用卡吗?  
*kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma*

Can I use a credit card?



我们只收现金。请从第一站台上车。  
*wǒmen zhǐ shōu xiànjīn. qǐng cóng dìyī zhàntái shàngchē*

We only take cash.  
The train leaves from platform one.



# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

How do you say “train”?  
(pp.38-39)

What are “tomorrow”  
and “yesterday” in  
Chinese? (pp.28-29)

Count from 10 to 20.  
(pp.30-31)

# QÙ/CHÉNG

## To go/to take

**qù** (to go) and **chéng** (to take) are essential verbs you will need as you find your way around. Chinese verbs do not change according to the subject or tense as they do in English (*I go, you went, etc.*). A verb generally appears immediately after the subject, or “doer,” of the action.

# 2 Qù/chéng: to go/to take (6 minutes)

Read these phrases aloud several times and try to memorize them. Conceal the Chinese with the cover flap and test yourself.

你去哪儿? **Where are you going?**  
*nǐ qù nǎr* (informal)

您要去哪儿? **Where are you going?**  
*nín yào qù nǎr* (formal)

我去火车站。 **I'm going to the station.**  
*wǒ qù huǒchēzhàn*

我乘地铁上班。 **I take the subway**  
*wǒ chéng dìtiě shàngbān* **to work.**

我乘出租车上班。  
*wǒ chéng chūzūchē* **I take a taxi to work.**  
*shàngbān*

我要乘公共汽车去。 **I want to go by bus.**  
*wǒ yào chéng*  
*gōnggòngqìchē qù*



今天我去长城。  
*jīntiān wǒ qù chángchéng*  
Today I'm going to  
the Great Wall.



**Cultural tip** Taxis in China have signs clearly marked in both Chinese characters and English. Most of the major cities have ample taxis cruising the main streets, and they are usually easy to hail. Otherwise, the hotel can order one. Fares are very reasonable by Western standards. Tipping is not customary, as it isn't in most service situations in China.

### 3 Past and future (6 minutes)

The character 了 *le* or 过 *guò* immediately after a verb shows it is in the past: *qù le* or *qù guò* (went/have been to). There is no special form for the future; the verb is used with a time indicator, e.g. *míngtiān* (tomorrow).



I took a taxi. 我乘了出租车。  
*wǒ chéng le chūzūchē*



I went to the Great Wall. 我去了长城。  
*wǒ qù le chángchéng*



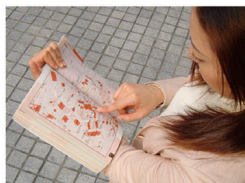
Tomorrow, I'll take the subway to work. 明天我乘地铁上班。  
*míngtiān wǒ chéng dìtiě shàngbān*



Tomorrow, I'll take the bus to work. 明天我乘公共汽车上班。  
*míngtiān wǒ chéng gōnggòng qìchē shàngbān*

### 4 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Cover the text on the right and complete the dialogue in Chinese.



你去哪儿? 我去火车站。  
*nǐ qù nǎr wǒ qù huǒchēzhàn*  
Where are you going?

Say: I'm going to the train station.



你要乘地铁吗? 不, 我要乘公共汽车。  
*nǐ yào chéng dìtiě ma bù, wǒ yào chéng gōnggòng qìchē*  
Do you want to take the subway?

Say: No, I want to take the bus.



你需要乘120路公共汽车。 谢谢你。  
*nǐ xūyào chéng yībǎi èrshí lù gōnggòng qìchē xièxiè nǐ*  
That'll be bus number 120.

Say: Thank you.

# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "I want to go by bus." (pp.40-41)

Ask "Where are you going?" (pp.40-41)

What's 88 in Chinese? (pp.30-31)

# GONGGONG QICHE, CHUZUCHÈ, DITIÈ Bus, taxi, and subway

On buses, you can generally buy your ticket from a machine as you get on board. In smaller cities, you can buy your tickets from a bus driver.

# 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

公共汽车 bus  
*gōnggòng qìchē*

出租车 taxi  
*chūzūchē*

地铁 subway  
*dìtiě*

公共汽车站 bus station  
*gōnggòng qìchēzhàn*

出租车站 taxi stand  
*chūzūchē zhàn*

地铁站 subway station  
*dìtiě zhàn*

车票 fare  
*chēpiào*

路 line/route  
*lù*



518路车在这儿停吗?  
*wǔbāiyīshíbā lù chē zài  
zhèr tíng ma*  
Does the number 518  
stop here?

# 3 In conversation: taxi (2 minutes)



请带我去故宫, 好吗。  
*qǐng dàiwǒ qù gùgōng,  
hǎo ma*

I'd like to go to the  
Forbidden City, please.



上车吧。  
*shàngchē ba*  
Get in.



我就在这儿下车, 可以吗?  
*wǒ jiù zài zhèr xià chē,  
kěyǐ ma*

Can you drop me  
here, please?

## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



I'd like a taxi to Dongdan, please.

请给我叫出租车去东单, 好吗。  
qǐng gěi wǒ jiào chūzūchē  
qù dōngdān, hǎo ma



What time is the next bus to the airport?

下一趟去机场的公共汽车几点发车?  
xià yī tǎng qù jīchǎng de  
gōnggòng qìchē jǐ diǎn  
fāchē



How do you get to the Summer Palace?

去颐和园怎么走?  
qù yíhéyuán zěnmē zǒu



Please wait for me.

请等等我。  
qǐng děngděng wǒ

### Cultural tip

Beijing and Shanghai have extensive subway systems. Station names can be recognized by a sign (as shown here), in both pinyin and Chinese. Fares are very reasonable.



## 6 Say it (2 minutes)

I'd like to go to the Summer Palace, please.

I'd like a taxi to the Forbidden City.

How do you get to Dongdan?

## 5 In conversation: bus (2 minutes)



这趟车去故宫博物院吗?  
zhè tǎng chē qù gùgōng  
bówùyuàn ma

Is this bus going to the Palace Museum?



是的。不很远。  
shìde. bù hěn yuǎn

Yes. It's not very far.



到了那里, 您能告诉我吗?  
dào le nàlǐ, nín néng  
gàosù wǒ ma

Can you tell me when to get off?

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

How do you say "I'd like a coffee, please?" (pp.14-15)

Say "my father," "my sister," and "my parents." (pp.12-13)

Say "I'm going to the Great Wall." (pp.40-41)

# JIÀ CHĒ

## On the road

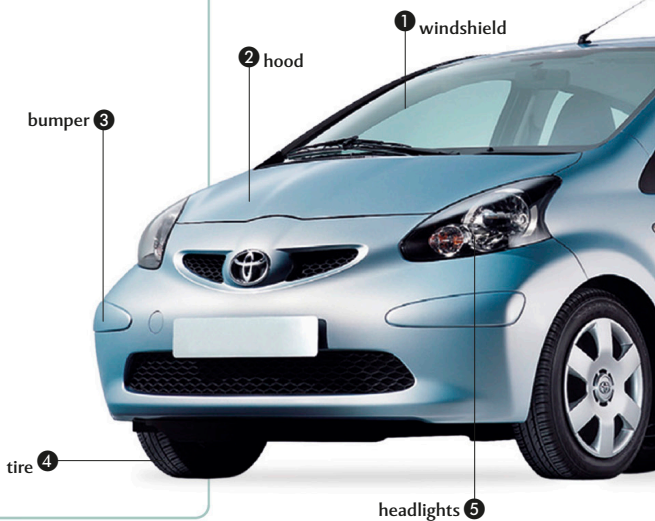
There's a growing number of cars in Chinese cities and on the expressways. The road systems are expanding fast. Renting a car is not as unusual or difficult as it once was, although issues with licenses and the crowded and unfamiliar roads make it preferable to also hire a driver.

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the list on the left, then test yourself.

- ① 挡风玻璃 *dǎngfēngbōlǐ*
- ② 发动机盖 *fādòngjīgài*
- ③ 保险杠 *bǎoxiǎngàng*
- ④ 车胎 *chētāi*
- ⑤ 前灯 *qiándēng*
- ⑥ 车门 *chēmén*
- ⑦ 车轮 *chēlún*
- ⑧ 后备箱 *hòubèixiāng*
- ⑨ 后视镜 *hòushìjìng*

**Cultural tip** Traffic in China moves on the right. The growing network of expressways is fast and efficient, but outside Beijing tolls are generally payable.



## 3 Road signs (2 minutes)



单向行车道  
*dānxiàng xíngchēdào*  
One-way traffic



出口 *chūkǒu*  
Exit



最大时速  
*zuìdà shísù*  
Speed limit



## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



The engine won't start. 发动机无法启动。  
*fādòngjī wúfǎ qǐdòng*

Fill it up, please. 请加满油箱。  
*qǐng jiāmǎn yóuxiāng*

## 6 Say it (1 minute)

Oil, please.  
The car won't start.



## 5 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself using the cover flap.

car 汽车  
*qìchē*

driver's license 驾照  
*jiàzhǎo*

gas 汽油  
*qìyóu*

oil 柴油  
*cháiyou*

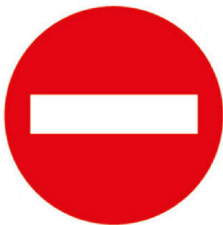
engine 发动机  
*fādòngjī*

flat tire 车胎没气了  
*chētāi méiqì le*

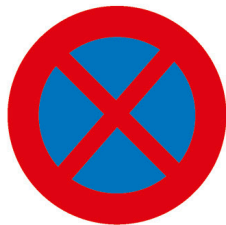
**Read it** Road signs are often written in Chinese characters only. If you're driving, familiarize yourself with the Chinese script for your destination, as well as the more common signs, such as 停 *tíng* (stop).



停  
*tíng*  
Stop



禁止进入  
*jìnzhǐ jìn rù*  
No entry



禁止停车  
*jìnzhǐ tíngchē*  
No parking

dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

# FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ

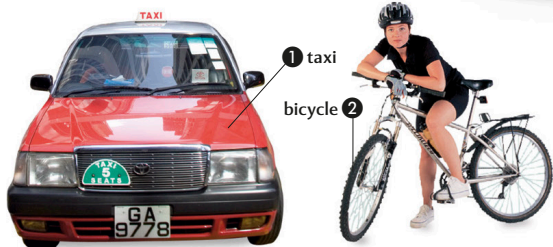
## Review and repeat

### 1 Transportation

- ① 出租车  
chūzūchē
- ② 自行车  
zìxíngchē
- ③ 汽车  
qìchē
- ④ 地铁  
dìtiě
- ⑤ 公共汽车  
gōnggòng qìchē

### 1 Transportation (3 minutes)

Name these forms of transportation in Chinese.



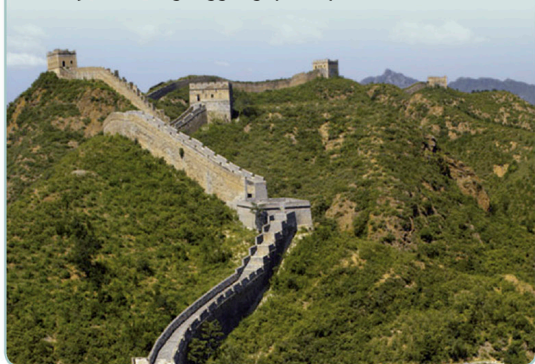
### 2 Go and take

- ① 去  
qù
- ② 哪儿  
nǎr
- ③ 站  
zhàn
- ④ 上班  
shàngbān
- ⑤ 了 / 过  
le/guò
- ⑥ 乘  
chéng

### 2 Go and take (4 minutes)

Use the correct Chinese word to fill in the blanks.

- ① jīntiān wǒ \_\_\_\_ chángchéng
- ② nín yào qù \_\_\_\_
- ③ wǒ qù huǒchē \_\_\_\_
- ④ wǒ chéng dìtiě qù \_\_\_\_
- ⑤ (zuótiān) wǒ chéng \_\_\_\_ chūzūchē
- ⑥ wǒ yào \_\_\_\_ gōnggòng qìchē qù





3 car

subway



4

5 bus



### 3 Questions

(4 minutes)

How do you ask these questions in Chinese?

- ① "Do you have any cakes?"
- ② "Do you have any children?"
- ③ "What time is it?"
- ④ "What time does the train leave?"
- ⑤ "Where are you going?" (informal)
- ⑥ "Can I use a credit card?"

### dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

### 3 Questions

- ① 有蛋糕吗?  
*yǒu dànɡāo ma*
- ② 你有孩子吗?  
*nǐ yǒu hái zi ma*
- ③ 现在几点了?  
*xiànzài jǐ diǎn le*
- ④ 火车几点发车?  
*huǒchē jǐ diǎn fāchē*
- ⑤ 你去哪儿?  
*nǐ qù nǎr*
- ⑥ 可以信用卡吗?  
*kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma*

### 4 Tickets (4 minutes)

You're buying tickets at a train station. Join in the conversation, replying in Chinese following the numbered English prompts.

*zǎoshàng hǎo*

- ① Can I buy two tickets to Shanghai, please?

*wǎngfǎnpào ma*

- ② No. I want one-way.

*zǒngòng yībǎi yuán*

- ③ What time does the train leave?

*yídiǎn bàn*

- ④ Which platform does the train leave from?

*qǐng cóng dì yī zhàntái shàngchē*

- ⑤ Thank you.



### 4 Tickets

- ① 我想买两张去上海的车票。  
*wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎngzhāng qù shànghǎi de chēpiào*
- ② 不, 我要单程票。  
*bù, wǒ yào dānchéngpiào*
- ③ 火车几点发车?  
*huǒchē jǐ diǎn fāchē*
- ④ 从第几站台上车?  
*cóng dì jǐ zhàntái shàngchē*
- ⑤ 谢谢你。  
*xièxiè nǐ*

# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Ask "Do you go to the museum?" (pp.42-43)

What are "station" and "ticket" in Chinese? (pp.38-39)

# ZÀI CHÉNGSHÌ NÈI Around town

To talk about features or facilities, you can use the word **yǒu**. Earlier, we learned that **yǒu** means *have/has*, but it can also mean *there is/are*. The opposite is **méi yǒu**. Notice the word order in Chinese: **dàqiáo fùjìn yǒu yóuyǒngchí** = *bridge/near to/there is/swimming pool* (There's a swimming pool near the bridge).

# 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered locations to the words in the panel.

- ① 斑马线  
bānmǎxiàn
- ② 停车场  
tíngchēchǎng
- ③ 喷泉  
pēnquán
- ④ 百货大楼  
bǎihuòdàlóu
- ⑤ 广场  
guǎngchǎng
- ⑥ 博物馆  
bówùguǎn
- ⑦ 电影院  
diànyǐngyuàn
- ⑧ 大桥  
dàqiáo



① crosswalk



② parking lot

③ fountain

department store ④



⑤ square



⑥ museum

# 3 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the cover flap.

加油站 gas station  
jiāyóuzhàn

旅游服务中心 tourist information center  
lǚyóu fúwù zhōngxīn

游泳池 swimming pool  
yóuyǒngchí

网吧 internet café  
wǎngbā



## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



宝塔在市中心。  
*bǎotǎ zài shìzhōngxīn*  
The pagoda is in the center of town.

Is there a museum nearby?  
*fùjìn yǒu bówùguǎn ma*

Is it far from here?  
*lí zhèlǐ yuǎn ma*

There's a swimming pool near the bridge.  
*dàqiáo fùjìn yǒu yóuyǒngchí*

There isn't a tourist information center.  
*méiyǒu lǚyóu fúwù zhōngxīn*

## 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.

7 movie theater

没有问题吧?  
*méiyǒu wèntí ba*  
Is everything okay?

Ask: Is there an internet café nearby?

没有, 但是有一个旅游服务中心。  
*méiyǒu, dànshì yǒu yīgè lǚyóu fúwù zhōngxīn*  
No there isn't, but there's a tourist information center.

Ask: Is it far from here?

靠近火车站。  
*kàojìn huǒchēzhàn*  
It's near the train station.

Say: Thank you.



8 bridge



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

How do you say "bridge" and "fountain"?  
(pp.48-49)

Ask "Is it far from here?"  
(pp.48-49)

Ask "Is there a museum in town?" (pp.48-49)

# WÈN LÙ

## Asking directions

Finding your way around a town in China can be confusing, so it is a good idea to learn how to ask for and understand directions. Chinese street names are written in characters along with pinyin transcription, so it's useful to familiarize yourself with both for your convenience.

## 2 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Practice these phrases and then test yourself.

左 / 右转。 Turn left/right.  
*zuǒ/yòu zhuǎn*

在左边。 On the left.  
*zài zuǒbiān*

在右边。 On the right.  
*zài yòubiān*

照直走。 Go straight ahead.  
*zhàozhí zǒu*

请问，去宝塔怎么走？ Excuse me, how do I get to the pagoda?  
*qǐngwèn, qù bǎotǎ zěnmē zǒu*

第一个街口，在左边。 First street on the left.  
*dìyī gè jiēkǒu, zài zuǒbiān*

第二个街口，在右边。 Second street on the right.  
*dì'èr gè jiēkǒu, zài yòubiān*



公园  
*gōngyuán*  
park

办公楼  
*bàngōnglóu*  
office building

走到街角，左转。  
*zǒu dào jiējǎo, zuǒzhuǎn*  
At the corner, turn left.

## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



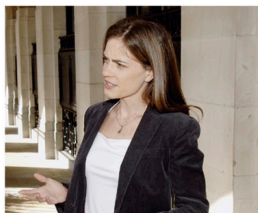
请问，城里有餐馆吗？  
*qǐngwèn, chénglǐ yǒu cānguǎn ma*

Excuse me, is there a restaurant in town?



有，靠近火车站。  
*yǒu, kào jìn huǒchē zhàn*

Yes there is, near the train station.



去火车站怎么走？  
*qù huǒchē zhàn zěnmē zǒu*

How do I get to the train station?

## 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.



我迷路了。  
wǒ mílù le  
I'm lost.

traffic lights 红绿灯  
hónglǜdēng

street corner 街角  
jiējǎo

street 街  
jiē

road 路  
lù

map 地图  
dìtú

overpass 立交桥  
lìjiāoqiáo

opposite 对面  
duìmiàn

at the end of the street 这条街走到底  
zhè tiáo jiē zǒu dào dǐ



我们在哪里？  
wǒmen zài nǎlǐ  
Where are we?

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

At the traffic lights,  
turn right.

At the station, turn left.

It's about ten minutes.



到了红绿灯，左转。  
dàole hónglǜdēng,  
zuǒ zhuǎn

At the traffic lights,  
turn left.



远吗？  
yuǎn ma

Is it far?



不远。大概五分钟。  
bù yuǎn. dàgài wǔfēn  
zhōng

No, it's about five minutes.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say the days of the week in Chinese. (pp.28-29)

How do you say "six o'clock"? (pp.30-31)

Ask "What time is it?" (pp.30-31)

# GUÀNGGUANG Sightseeing

Chinese shops are open late every day, closing around 10 or 11 p.m., and they operate seven days a week. Tourist sights such as museums are usually open all day from about 8 a.m., but may be closed during the lunch hour and for one day a week, although this is not always the case.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

导游册 guidebook  
*dǎoyóu cè*

免费(入场) free (entrance)  
*miǎnfèi (rùchǎng)*

门票 admission ticket  
*ménpiào*

禁止拍照 cameras not allowed  
*jìnzhǐ pāizhào*

休息 closed  
*xiūxi*



团体参观  
*tuántǐ cānguān*  
guided tour

**Cultural tip** China is a vast country, with its major cities growing so fast that sightseeing often requires a lot of advance planning. Internal flights can be arranged to take you between the different regions, but you will need permits to visit some areas, and it is best to check this out locally before you set out.

## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



你们今天下午开门吗?  
*nǐmen jīntiān xiàwǔ kāimén ma*

Do you open this afternoon?



是的, 但我们六点钟关门。  
*shìde, dàn wǒmen liù diǎnzhōng guānmén*

Yes, but we close at six o'clock.



轮椅可以方便进出吗?  
*lúnǚ kěyǐ fāngbiàn jìnchū ma*

Is wheelchair access possible?

## 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



What time do you open? 你们什么时间开门?  
*nǐmen shénme shíjiān kāimén*



What time do you close? 你们什么时间关门?  
*nǐmen shénme shíjiān guānmén*



Is wheelchair access possible? 轮椅可以方便进出吗?  
*lúnǚ kěyǐ fāngbiàn jìnchū ma*

## 5 Put into practice (4 minutes)

Cover the text on the right and complete the dialogue in Chinese.



对不起, 博物馆关门了。  
*duìbuqǐ, bówùguǎn guānmén le*  
Sorry, the museum is closed.

Ask: Do you open on Sundays?



是的, 但是关门时间比较早。  
*shìde, dànshì guānmén shíjiān bǐjiào zǎo*  
Yes, but we close early.

Ask: What time do you close?



可以, 那边有电梯。  
*kěyǐ, nàbiān yǒu diàntī*  
Yes, there's an elevator over there.



谢谢, 我要买四张门票。  
*xièxie, wǒ yào mǎi sì zhāng ménpiào*  
Thank you. I'd like to buy four tickets.



这是您的门票, 导游册免费。  
*zhè shì nín de ménpiào, dǎoyóu cè miǎnfèi*  
Here are your tickets. The guidebook is free.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "Would you please help me?" (pp.24-25)

What's the Chinese for "ticket"? (pp.38-39)

Say "I'm going to Shanghai." (pp.40-41)

# ZÀI JÌCHǎNG

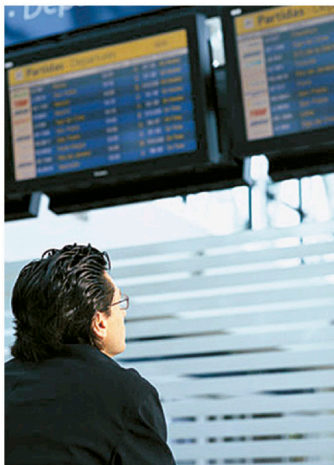
## At the airport

International flights arrive at most major cities, and there is an extensive network of internal flights operating from every provincial capital. Although the airport environment is largely universal, it is sometimes useful to be able to understand key words and phrases in Chinese.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

办理登机手续 <i>bànlǐ dēngjī shǒuxù</i>	check-in
出发 <i>chūfā</i>	departures
到达 <i>dàodá</i>	arrivals
海关 <i>hǎiguān</i>	customs
边防检查 <i>biānfáng jiǎnchá</i>	passport control
候机楼 <i>hòujīlóu</i>	terminal
登机口 <i>dēngjīkǒu</i>	gate
航班 <i>hángbān</i>	flight
飞机 <i>fēijī</i>	plane



哪个登机口去香港?  
*nǎ gè dēngjīkǒu qù xiānggǎng*  
Which gate is it for Hong Kong?

## 3 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

去伦敦的飞机准点吗?  
*qù lúndūn de fēijī zhǔndiǎn ma*

Is the plane to London on time?

我找不到我的行李。  
*wǒ zhǎo bú dào wǒde xíngli*

I can't find my baggage.

去上海的飞机晚点了。  
*qù shànghǎi de fēijī wǎndiǎn le*

The plane to Shanghai is delayed.





#### 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.



下一位。去上海的飞机准点吗?  
xiàyíwèi qù shànghǎi de fēijī  
Next, please. zhǔndiǎn ma

Ask: Is the plane to Shanghai on time?



是的, 准点。哪个登机口?  
shìde, zhǔndiǎn nǎ gè dēngjīkǒu  
Yes, it's on time.

Ask: Which gate is it?

#### 5 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the Chinese words in the panel.

boarding pass ①

ticket ②

passport ③

- ① 登机牌 dēngjīpái
- ② 机票 jīpiào
- ③ 护照 hùzhào
- ④ 箱子 xiāngzi
- ⑤ 手推车 shǒutuīchē

#### Read it

Chinese takes basic concepts and combines them to make different meanings, e.g.  
飞机 fēijī plane (flying 飞 fēi + machine 机 jī);  
火车 huǒchē train (fire 火 huǒ + vehicle 车 chē).

④ suitcase

⑤ cart

dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

# FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ

## Review and repeat

### 1 Places

- ① 博物馆  
bówùguǎn
- ② 斑马线  
bānmǎxiàn
- ③ 大桥  
dàqiáo
- ④ 宝塔  
bǎotǎ
- ⑤ 停车场  
tíngchēchǎng
- ⑥ 电影院  
diànyǐngyuàn
- ⑦ 广场  
guǎngchǎng

### 1 Places (4 minutes)

Name the numbered places in Chinese.



① museum



② crosswalk



③ bridge



④ pagoda



⑤ parking lot



⑥ movie theater

square ⑦



### 2 Car parts

- ① 挡风玻璃  
dǎngfēngbōlǐ
- ② 前灯  
qiándēng
- ③ 保险杠  
bǎoxiǎngàng
- ④ 车门  
chēmén
- ⑤ 车胎  
chētāi

### 2 Car parts (3 minutes)

Name these car parts in Chinese.

windshield ①

tire ⑤



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 3 Translation (4 minutes)

What do these Chinese phrases mean?

- ① *zhuǎn zuǒ*
- ② *chéng lǐ yǒu bówùguǎn ma*
- ③ *méi yǒu wǎngbā*
- ④ *wǒmen zài nǎlǐ*
- ⑤ *dàqiáo fùjìn yǒu yóuyóngchí*
- ⑥ *nǐmen shénme shíjiān kāimén*
- ⑦ *wǒ yào mǎi sì zhāng ménpiào*



## 3 Translation

- ① Turn left.
- ② Is there a museum in town?
- ③ There isn't an internet café.
- ④ Where are we?
- ⑤ There's a swimming pool near the bridge.
- ⑥ What time do you open?
- ⑦ I'd like four tickets.

## 4 Directions (4 minutes)

Ask how to get to these places:

- ① pagoda
- ② train station
- ③ internet café
- ④ movie theater



② headlight



## 4 Directions

- ① 去宝塔怎么走?  
*qù bǎotǎ zěnmē zǒu*
- ② 去火车站怎么走?  
*qù huǒchē zhàn zěnmē zǒu*
- ③ 去网吧怎么走?  
*qù wǎngbā zěnmē zǒu*
- ④ 去电影院怎么走?  
*qù diànyǐngyuàn zěnmē zǒu*

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Ask "How much is that?"  
(pp.18-19)

What are "breakfast,"  
"lunch," and "dinner?"  
(pp.20-21)

What are "three," "four,"  
"five," and "six?" (pp.10-11)

# DÌNG FÁNGJIĀN

## Booking a room

Large and medium-sized cities have a considerable number of international hotels, as well as traditional Chinese spas. Most hotels are star-rated, and Western tourists will generally find that hotels with a minimum of a three-star rating will meet their expected standards.

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Practice these phrases and then test yourself by concealing the Chinese on the left with the cover flap.

房价包含早餐吗?  
*fángjià bāohán zǎocān ma* Is breakfast included?  
(Does the room include breakfast?)



房间里能上网吗?  
*fángjiān lǐ néng shàngwǎng ma* Does the room have internet access?



有送餐服务吗?  
*yǒu sòngcān fúwù ma* Is there room service?



最迟几点钟退房?  
*zuìchí jǐdiǎnzhōng tuìfáng* What time is check-out?



## 3 In conversation (5 minutes)



有空房间吗?  
*yǒu kòng fángjiān ma*

Do you have any rooms?



有。我们有一间双人房。  
*yǒu. wǒmen yǒu yījiān shuāngrén fáng*

Yes, we have a double room.



有送餐服务吗?  
*yǒu sòngcān fúwù ma*

Is there room service?

## 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself by concealing the Chinese on the right with the cover flap.



房间里能看到海景吗?  
*fángjiān lǐ néng kàndào hǎijǐng ma*  
Does the room have  
an ocean view?

room 房间  
*fángjiān*

single room 单人房  
*dānrén fáng*

double room 双人房  
*shuāngrén fáng*

elevator 电梯  
*diàntī*

bathroom 卫生间  
*wèishēngjiān*

shower 淋浴  
*línǚ*

breakfast 早餐  
*zǎocān*

key 钥匙  
*yàoshì*

balcony 阳台  
*yángtái*

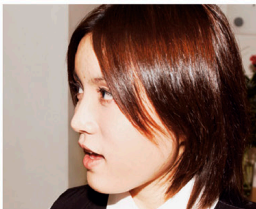
two nights 两天  
*liǎngtiān*

three nights 三天  
*sāntiān*

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Do you have any single rooms?  
Two nights.  
Is dinner included?

**Cultural tip** Chinese hotel rooms tend to include a pair of house slippers as a matter of course. You are assumed to want to remove your shoes in the room as you would at home. Toothbrushes and toothpaste are also provided.



有。您要住几天?  
*yǒu. nín yào zhù jǐtiān*

Yes, there is. How  
many nights?



三天。  
*sāntiān*

Three nights.



好了。这是您的钥匙。  
*hǎole. zhè shì nín de yàoshì*

Very good. Here's  
your key.



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

How do you say “Is/Are there...?”, “There is/are...,” and “There isn’t/aren’t...”? (pp.48-49)

What’s the Chinese for “room”? (pp.58-59)

# ZÀI JIǔDIÀN In the hotel

Most of the new hotels designed for foreign tourists and business people are modeled on standard international hotel chains. Those rated three stars or above usually provide a broadband internet connection in the room, free of charge.

## 2 Match and repeat (6 minutes)

Match the numbered items in this hotel bedroom with the Chinese text in the panel and test yourself using the cover flap.

① 床头柜  
*chuángtóuguì*

② 电灯  
*diàndēng*

③ 窗帘  
*chuānglián*

④ 沙发  
*shāfā*

⑤ 枕头  
*zhěntou*

⑥ 床  
*chuáng*

⑦ 床单  
*chuángdān*

⑧ 毛毯  
*máotǎn*



**Cultural tip** It's common to find a insulated bottle of hot water in your room to make tea or simply drink by itself. Room service should be able to refill the bottle if it runs out. Bottled water is also sometimes provided free of charge. Like most international hotels, hotels in China add a surcharge for using the telephone.

### 3 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



The room is too hot. 房间里太热。  
*fángjiān lǐ tài rè*



The room is too cold. 房间里太冷。  
*fángjiān lǐ tài lěng*



There aren't any towels. 没有毛巾了。  
*méi yǒu máojīn le*



I'd like some soap. 我要一块肥皂。  
*wǒ yào yīkuài féizào*



The shower is broken. 淋浴坏了。  
*línǚ huài le*

### 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Cover the text on the right and then complete the dialogue in Chinese.



你好, 我是前台。 没有枕头了。  
*nǐhǎo, wǒ shì qiántái méi yǒu zhěntou le*  
Hello, this is the front desk.

Say: There aren't any pillows.



工作人员很快就会给您送去。  
*gōngzuò rényuán hěnkuài jiù huì gěi nín sòngqù*  
The staff will bring you some.

Say: And also, the room is too hot.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What is Chinese for “shower” (pp.60-61) and “swimming pool”? (pp.48-49)

Say “I’d like some towels.” (pp.60-61)

# WÈNQUÁN DÙJIÀ Hot spas

Many tourist spots in China feature *wēnquán dùjià* (hot spas), combined with lodging at times. You can experience traditional Chinese beauty and healing treatments, which emphasize the balance between *yīn* and *yáng* and advocate natural ways to boost *qì* (vitality inside the body).

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Learn these words and then test yourself by concealing the Chinese with the cover flap.

- ① 阳伞  
yángsǎn
- ② 晨衣  
chényī
- ③ 蜡烛  
làzhú
- ④ 床旗  
chuángqí
- ⑤ 拖鞋  
tuōxié
- ⑥ 足疗  
zúliáo



foot treatment ⑥

slippers ⑤

bed runner ④

## 3 In conversation: (5 minutes)



有哪些疗法呢?  
yǒu nǎxiē liáofǎ ne

What kind of treatments are there?



可以做按摩, 也可以洗温泉浴。  
kěyǐ zuò ànmó, yě kěyǐ xǐ wēnquán yù

You can have a massage or a hot spa bath.



一次需要多长时间?  
yīcì xūyào duōcháng shíjiān

How long will the treatment take?

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Can I have a hot  
spa bath?

What kind of massages  
are there?

I'd like a foot massage.

3 candle



## 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases. Read the English under the pictures and say the phrase in Chinese as shown on the right. Then conceal the Chinese with the cover flap and test yourself.



一次需要多长时间?  
*yí cì xū yào duō cháng shí jiān*

How long will the  
treatment take?



可以针灸吗?  
*kě yǐ zhēn jiǔ ma*

Can I have acupuncture?



可以药物洗脚吗?  
*kě yǐ yào wù xǐ jiǎo ma*

Can I have an herbal  
foot massage?



这草药味道很香。  
*zhè cǎo yào wèi dào hěn xiāng*

These herbs are fragrant.



有一小时的, 也有  
两小时的。  
*yǒu yí xiǎo shí de, yě yǒu liǎng xiǎo shí de*

There are one-hour or  
two-hour (sessions).



很贵吗?  
*hěn guì ma*  
Is it very expensive?



不贵, 一小时350元。  
*bú guì, yí xiǎo shí sān bǎi wǔ shí yuán*

It's not expensive,  
350 yuan per hour.



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

How do you say  
“My son has a car”?  
(pp.14-15)

What is the Chinese  
for “room,” “bed,” and  
“pillow”? (pp.60-61)

# XÍNGRÓNGCÍ

## Adjectives

Basic adjectives (descriptive words) are quite straightforward in Chinese: car(s) is **qìchē**; small car(s) is **xiǎo qìchē**. A simple way to describe things is to use the word **hěn**, which carries the meaning of very: **zhè qìchē hěn xiǎo** “This car is (very) small,” **shān hěn gāo** “The mountains are (very) high.”

## 2 Words to remember (7 minutes)

There are no plurals in Chinese. So “the mountain is (very) high” and “the mountains are (very) high” would both be **shān hěn gāo**.

大 **dà** big, large

小 **xiǎo** small

高 **gāo** high, tall

低 **dī** low

热 **rè** hot

冷 **lěng** cold

安静 **ānjìng** quiet

吵闹 **chǎonào** noisy

硬 **yìng** hard

软 **ruǎn** soft

美 **měi** beautiful

宝塔很古老。  
**bǎotǎ hěn gǔlǎo**  
The pagoda is  
(very) old.



**Read it** The first two adjectives above—大 **dà**, big, and 小 **xiǎo**, small—are among the easiest Chinese characters to recognize. They originate from representations of a person holding arms out wide (big) and pointing down by the side (small). These characters combine with others; for example, 小鼠 **xiǎoshǔ** means mouse (small rat), 大衣 **dàyī** means coat (big jacket).

树很美。  
**shù hěn měi**  
The trees are  
(very) beautiful.



### 3 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these useful descriptive phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



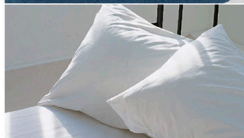
The coffee is cold. 咖啡冷了。  
*kāfēi lěng le*



My room is very noisy. 我的房间很吵闹。  
*wǒde fángjiān hěn chǎonào*



This car is very small. 这汽车很小。  
*zhè qìchē hěn xiǎo*



This bed is very hard. 这床很硬。  
*zhè chuáng hěn yìng*

### 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Cover up the text on the right and complete the dialogue in Chinese. Check and repeat if necessary.



房间在这里。景色很美。  
*fángjiān zài zhèlǐ jǐngsè hěn měi*  
Here's the room.

Say: The view is very beautiful.



卫生间在那里。房间很小。  
*wèishēngjiān zài nàlǐ fángjiān hěn xiǎo*  
The bathroom is over there.

Say: The room is very small.



可惜，没有其他房间了。我们就要它。  
*kěxī, méiyǒu qítā fángjiān le wǒmen jiù yào tā*  
Unfortunately, there aren't any other rooms.

Say: We'll take it.

## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

FÙXÍ YŮ LIÀNXÍ  
Review and repeat

## 1 Adjectives

- ① 大  
dà
- ② 软  
ruǎn
- ③ 古老  
gǔlǎo
- ④ 安静  
ānjìng
- ⑤ 冷  
lěng

## 1 Adjectives (3 minutes)

Put the word in brackets into Chinese.

- ① zhè qíchē hěn \_\_\_\_\_ (big)
- ② zhè chuáng hěn \_\_\_\_\_ (soft)
- ③ bǎotǎ hěn \_\_\_\_\_ (old) ma
- ④ wǒde fángjiān hěn \_\_\_\_\_ (quiet)
- ⑤ chá \_\_\_\_\_ (cold) le



## 2 Spas

- ① 足疗  
zúliáo
- ② 拖鞋  
tuōxié
- ③ 阳伞  
yángsǎn
- ④ 晨衣  
chényī
- ⑤ 蜡烛  
làzhú
- ⑥ 床旗  
chuángqí

## 2 Spas (3 minutes)

Name these items you might find in a traditional Chinese spa.

- ① foot treatment
- ② slippers
- ③ parasol
- ④ bathrobe



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 3 At the hotel (4 minutes)

You are booking a room in a hotel. Follow the conversation, replying in Chinese using the English prompts.

nǐhǎo

① Do you have any rooms?

nǐ yào zhù jǐtiān

② Five nights.

hǎole

③ Is breakfast included?

fángjià bāohán zǎocān

④ We'll take it.



## 3 At the hotel

① 有空房间吗?  
yǒu kōng fángjiān ma② 五天。  
wǔtiān③ 房价包含早餐吗?  
fángjià bāohán  
zǎocān ma④ 我们就要它。  
wǒmen jiù yào tā

## 4 Negatives (5 minutes)

Make these sentences negative using *bú* or *méi*.

① wǒ shì zhōngguó rén

② wǒ yǒu sāngè hái zi

③ fùjìn yǒu wǎngbā

④ hánhóng shì xuéshēng

⑤ wǒmen yǒu kāfēi



## 4 Negatives

① 我不是中国人。  
wǒ bú shì  
zhōngguó rén② 我没有三个孩子。  
wǒ méi yǒu sāngè  
hái zi③ 附近没有网吧吗?  
fùjìn méi yǒu  
wǎngbā ma④ 韩红不是学生。  
hánhóng bú shì  
xuéshēng⑤ 我们没有咖啡。  
wǒmen méi yǒu kāfēi

⑤ candle

bed runner ⑥



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Ask “Can I use a credit card?” (p.39)

Say “At the traffic lights, turn left,” and “The station is near the café.” (pp.50-51)

# Bǎihuò SHĀNGDIÀN

## Department store

Department stores are sometimes referred to as **bǎihuòdàlóu** (*big building department stores*) since they tend to be landmark buildings in city centers, selling everything from clothes to musical instruments. The concept is changing as shopping malls have mushroomed in many Chinese cities.

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Notice the Chinese word 类 *lèi*, meaning category: **jiǔlèi**, spirit category (liquor store); **yúlèi**, fish category (fishmonger), etc. Match the shops below to the Chinese words in the panel on the left.

- ① 面包类 *miànbāolèi*
- ② 糕点类 *gāodiǎnlèi*
- ③ 酒类 *jiǔlèi*
- ④ 熟食类 *shúshílèi*
- ⑤ 蔬菜类 *shūcàilèi*
- ⑥ 图书类 *túshūlèi*
- ⑦ 鱼类 *yúlèi*
- ⑧ 肉类 *ròulèi*
- ⑨ 豆制品类 *dòuzhīpǐnlèi*



① bakery



② sweet shop



④ delicatessen



⑤ greengrocer



⑦ fishmonger



⑧ butcher shop



### Cultural tip

Department stores are a good place to look for gifts to take home and often have a folk art section (**gōngyìpǐnlèi**). Here you can buy traditional souvenirs, from sandalwood fans to embroideries and vases. Most of the large stores will also be able to accept credit cards—something you can't rely on in smaller shops.

### 3 Words to remember (4 minutes)



哪里有花卉店?  
nǎlǐ yǒu huāhuì diàn  
Can you tell me where  
the florist is?

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself.

convenience store 乳制品  
rǔzhìpǐn

antique store 古董店  
gǔdǒngdiàn

hair salon 美发店  
měifàdiàn

barber shop 理发店  
lǐfàdiàn

jewelry store 珠宝店  
zhūbǎodiàn

post office 邮局  
yóujú

florist 花卉店  
huāhuìdiàn

shoe store 鞋店  
xiédiàn

travel agency 旅行社  
lǚxíngshè



3 liquor store



6 bookstore



9 tofu shop

### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these phrases.

Can you tell me where the hair salon is? 哪里有美发店?  
nǎlǐ yǒu měifàdiàn

Where can I pay? 在哪里付钱?  
zài nǎlǐ fùqián

I'm just looking, thanks. 我只想看看, 谢谢。  
wǒ zhǐxiǎng kànkàn, xièxiè

Where can I buy a SIM card? 哪里可以买到 SIM 卡?  
nǎlǐ kěyǐ mǎidào SIM kǎ

Can I exchange this? 我可以更换它吗?  
wǒ kěyǐ gēnghuàn tā ma

I'd like a receipt, please. 请给我一张发票, 好吗。  
qǐng gěiwǒ yīzhāng fāpiào, hǎo ma

I'd like to place an order for... 我想订购一个...  
wǒ xiǎng dìnggòu yīgè...

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Can you tell me where the bakery is?

Where can I buy fish?

I'd like to place an order for curtains.



# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What are “forty,” “seventy,” “a hundred,” “a thousand,” and “ten thousand” in Chinese? (pp.30-31)

Say “big” and “small” in Chinese. (pp.64-65)

## DIÀNQÌ SHANGDIÀN Electronics store

It is still possible to buy electrical and electronic consumer goods more cheaply in China, as long as you are prepared to bargain. In every mall and large department store, there's bound to be a store or department selling computers, cell phones, digital cameras, etc. Power rates in China are 220V/50Hz.

# 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

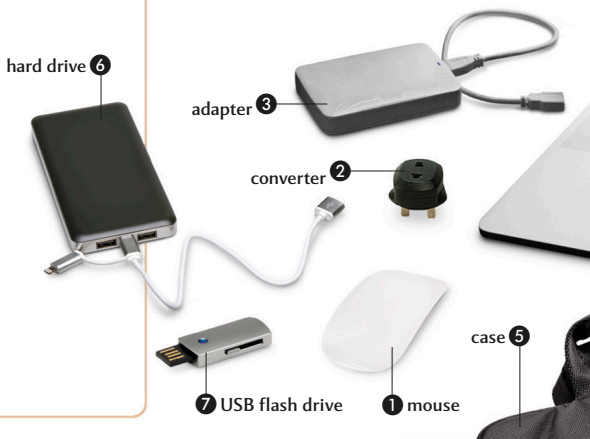
Match the numbered items to the Chinese words in the panel on the left and test yourself using the cover flap.

- ① 鼠标  
shǔbiāo
- ② 适配器  
shìpèiqì
- ③ 变压器  
biànyāqì
- ④ 笔记本电脑  
bǐjìběn diànnǎo
- ⑤ 电脑包  
diànnǎo bāo
- ⑥ 硬盘  
yìngpán
- ⑦ U盘  
U pán

**Read it** When you see price tags, you will usually see the symbol for *yuán* (¥) followed by the price in Western currency, or sometimes the price followed by the Chinese character 元.

¥5800

50元



# 3 In conversation (5 minutes)



这台笔记本电脑多少钱?  
zhè tái bǐjìběn diànnǎo  
duō shǎo qián

How much is that  
laptop computer?



5800元。  
wǔqiān bābǎi yuán

It's 5,800 yuan.



硬盘空间有多大?  
yìngpán kōngjiān yǒu duō dà

How big is the hard drive?



**Cultural tip** The Chinese currency is called *rénmínbì* (literally *people's money*) and the unit is the yuan. The highest denomination banknote is 100 yuan. Although this may not seem like a large amount when you exchange currency, 100 yuan can still go a long way in China.

#### 4 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Learn these phrases. Then conceal the answers on the right using the cover flap. Read the English under the pictures and say the phrase in Chinese as shown on the right.



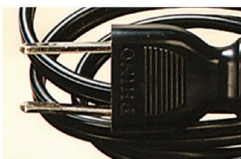
这架相机太贵。  
*zhè jià xiàngjī tài guì*

This camera is too expensive.



这款多少钱?  
*zhè kuǎn duō shǎo qián*

How much is this one?



在英国能用吗?  
*zài yīngguó néng yòng ma*

Will it work in England?



4 laptop



40吉兆, 1吉兆的内存。  
*sìshí jízào, yī jízào de nèicún*

40 gigabytes, and 1 gigabyte of memory.



在英国能用吗?  
*zài yīngguó néng yòng ma*

Will it work in England?



能用。但是需要一个变压器。  
*néngyòng. dànshì xūyào yīgè biànyǎqì*

Yes it will, but you need a converter.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What are these items that you could buy in a supermarket? (pp.22-23)

shuǐguǒ  
mǐfān  
shūcài  
miàntiáo  
yú  
ròu

# CHĀOJÍ SHÌCHǎNG

## At the supermarket

In recent years, many multinational supermarket operators have entered the Chinese market. Familiar names can be found in every large and medium-sized city in China. The layout is similar to Western supermarkets but with a blend of Chinese and imported goods available.

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Look at the numbered items and match them to the Chinese words in the panel on the left.

- 1 饮料  
yǐnliào
- 2 化妆品  
huàzhuāngpǐn
- 3 小吃  
xiǎochī
- 4 冷冻食品  
lěngdòngshípǐn
- 5 蔬菜  
shūcài
- 6 即食食品  
jíshíshípǐn
- 7 家庭用品  
jiātíngyòngpǐn
- 8 水果  
shuǐguǒ

drinks 1

8 fruit

household products 7

prepared meals 6

vegetables 5

frozen foods 4

### Cultural tip

Supermarkets usually prepackage fresh produce such as meat, fish, fruit, vegetables, and soybean products. You just pick up the prepriced package you want and take it to the checkout counter.



### 3 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



I'd like a bag, please. 请给我一个塑料袋, 好吗。  
*qǐng gěi wǒ yīgè sùliàodài, hǎo ma*



Where is the drink section? 饮料在什么地方?  
*yǐnliào zài shénme dìfāng*



Where's the checkout counter? 在哪儿付款?  
*zài nǎr fùkuǎn*



Where are the shopping carts? 哪儿有手推车?  
*nǎr yǒu shǒutuīchē*

### 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Learn these words and then test yourself using the cover flap.

bread 面包  
*miànbāo*

milk 牛奶  
*niúnnǎi*

butter 黄油  
*huángyóu*

dairy products 乳制品  
*rǔzhìpǐn*

ham 火腿  
*huǒtuǐ*

salt 盐  
*yán*

pepper 胡椒  
*hújiāo*

toilet paper 卫生纸  
*wèishēngzhǐ*

diapers 尿片  
*niàopiàn*

dishwashing liquid 洗洁精  
*xǐjiéjīng*

2 beauty products

3 snacks

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Where is the snack section?

I'd like some butter, please.

Is there any ham?



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "I'd like a..., please."  
(pp.24-25)

Ask "Is there a...?"  
(pp.48-49)

Say "thirteen," "twenty-four," and "thirty."  
(pp.30-31)

Say "big" and "small."  
(pp.64-65)

# YĪFU HÉ XIÉZI

## Clothes and shoes

A vast variety of clothing to suit all styles and budgets is now available in China, both in the clothing sections of shopping centers and department stores and in local markets. Except in some of the more rural areas, traditional dress is now mainly seen only in movies and at the Chinese opera.

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items of clothing to the Chinese words in the panel on the left. Test yourself using the cover flap.

① 衬衫  
*chènshān*

② 领带  
*lǐngdài*

③ 袖子  
*xiùzi*

④ 夹克衫  
*jiākèshān*

⑤ 衣袋  
*yīdài*

⑥ 裤子  
*kùzi*

⑦ 裙子  
*qúnzi*

⑧ 裤袜  
*kùwà*

⑨ 鞋子  
*xiézi*

shirt ①

tie ②

sleeve ③

pocket ⑤

pants ⑥

④ jacket

**Cultural tip** China has different systems of sizes. Often clothes sizes are given in a combination of height (in meters) and chest size, or by using the general size indicators (XL, L, M, S, XS, etc.). Even allowing for conversion of sizes, Chinese clothes—and especially shoes—tend to be smaller than their Western equivalents.





### 3 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



Do you have a larger size? 有大一号的吗?  
*yǒu dà yīhào de ma*



It's not what I want. 这不是我想要的。  
*zhè búshì wǒ xiǎng yào de*



I'll take the pink one. 我要粉红色的。  
*wǒ yào fěnhóng sè de*

### 4 Words to remember (5 minutes)

Colors are adjectives (see p.64). Below, you will see the pure form of the colors, but often the character 色 *sè* and/or 的 *de* is added, depending on the sentence.

red/pink 红 / 粉红  
*hōng/fěnhóng*

white 白  
*bái*

blue 蓝  
*lán*

yellow 黄  
*huáng*

green 绿  
*lǜ*

black 黑  
*hēi*



7 skirt

8 pantyhose

9 shoes

**Read it** The characters for colors are worth recognizing, and they can often be seen in combination:

白酒 *báijiǔ* white liquor

红茶 *hóngchá* red tea

黄油 *huángyóu* butter ("yellow fat")

蓝图 *lántú* blueprint ("blue picture")

## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

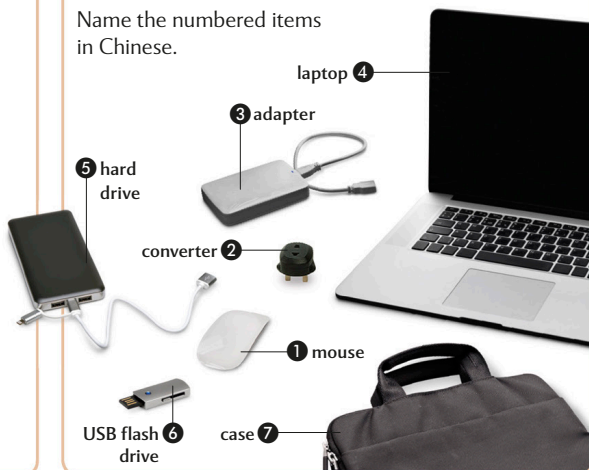
FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ  
Review and repeat

## 1 Electronic

- ① 鼠标  
shǔbiāo
- ② 适配器  
shìpèiqì
- ③ 变压器  
biànyǎqì
- ④ 笔记本电脑  
bìjìběn diànnǎo
- ⑤ 硬盘  
yìngpán
- ⑥ U盘  
U pán
- ⑦ 电脑包  
diànnǎo bāo

## 1 Electronic (3 minutes)

Name the numbered items in Chinese.



## 2 Description

- ① This camera is too expensive.
- ② My room is very noisy.
- ③ Do you have a larger size?

## 2 Description (2 minutes)

What do these phrases mean?

- ① zhè jià xiàngjī tài guì
- ② wǒde fángjiān hěn chǎonào
- ③ yǒu dà yīhào de ma

## 3 Shops

- ① 面包类  
miànbāolèi
- ② 熟食类  
shúshílèi
- ③ 蔬菜类  
shūcǎilèi
- ④ 鱼类  
yúlèi
- ⑤ 糕点类  
gāodiǎnlèi
- ⑥ 肉类  
ròulèi

## 3 Shops (3 minutes)

Name the numbered shops in Chinese. Then check your answers.



① bakery



② delicatessen



③ greengrocer



④ fishmonger



⑤ sweet shop



⑥ butcher shop

dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 4 Supermarket (3 minutes)



## 4 Supermarket

- ① 饮料  
yǐnliào
- ② 家庭用品  
jiātingyòngpǐn
- ③ 化妆品  
huàzhuāngpǐn
- ④ 冷冻食品  
lěngdòngshípǐn
- ⑤ 小吃  
xiǎochī

## 5 Museum (4 minutes)

Join in this conversation, replying in Chinese following the English prompts.

nǐhǎo

- ① I'd like to buy four tickets.  
zhè shì nín de ménpiào
- ② What time do you close?  
wǒmen liùdiǎnzhōng guānmén
- ③ Is there a guidebook?  
yǒu. dǎoyǒu cè miǎnfèi
- ④ Where's the elevator?  
nàbiān yǒu diàntī
- ⑤ Thank you.

## 5 Museum

- ① 我要买四张门票。  
wǒ yào mǎi sìzhāng ménpiào
- ② 你们什么时间关门?  
nǐmen shénme shíjiān guānmén
- ③ 有导游册吗?  
yǒu dǎoyóu cè ma
- ④ 电梯在哪里?  
diàntī zài nǎlǐ
- ⑤ 谢谢你。  
xièxiè nǐ



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say “Han Hong is a student” and “I’m English.” (pp.14-15)

Say “The internet café is in the center of town.” (pp.48-49)

# GONGZUO

## Jobs

Many Chinese words that are used to refer to occupations have the character 师 *shī* (master) or 生 *shēng* (person) at the end. The leader or head of a unit is indicated by the character 长 *zhǎng*. Businesses often have a tight hierarchy (see Cultural tip on p.79).

## 2 Words to remember: jobs (7 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these Chinese words and test yourself using the flap.

医生 doctor  
*yīshēng*

牙医 dentist  
*yáyī*

护士 nurse  
*hùshì*

老师 teacher  
*lǎoshī*

会计师 accountant  
*kuàijìshī*

律师 lawyer  
*lǚshī*

设计师 designer  
*shèjìshī*

秘书 secretary  
*mìshū*

店主 shopkeeper  
*diànzhu*

工程师 engineer  
*gōngchéngshī*

管道工 plumber  
*guǎndàogōng*

厨师 cook  
*chúshī*

个体户 self-employed  
*gètǐhù*

学生 student  
*xuéshēng*



我是商人。  
*wǒ shì shāngrén*  
I'm a business person.



我是会计师。  
*wǒ shì kuàijìshī*  
I'm an accountant.

### 3 Put into practice (4 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Use the cover flap to conceal the text on the right and complete the dialogue in Chinese.



您做什么工作?  
*nín zuò shénme gōngzuò*  
What's your profession?  
Say: I'm a designer.



您在哪个公司工作?  
*nín zài nǎgè gōngsī gōngzuò*  
What company do you work for?  
Say: I'm self-employed.



哦, 是这样。  
*ò, shì zhèyàng*  
Oh, I see.  
Ask: What's your profession?

**Cultural tip** There are different titles for “manager,” depending on the level. The order of seniority is 总经理 *zǒngjīnglǐ* (MD), 部门总监 *bùmén zǒngjiān* (director), 处长 *chùzhǎng* (head of division), 科长 *kēzhǎng* (head of unit), 组长 *zǔzhǎng* (group leader). Look out for the titles on business cards.



### 4 Words to remember: workplace (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself.



总部在上海。  
*zǒngbù zài shànghǎi*  
The headquarters is in Shanghai.

headquarters 总部  
*zǒngbù*

branch 分支机构  
*fēnzhī jīgòu*

department 部  
*bù*

office worker 办公人员  
*bàngōng rényuán*

manager 经理  
*jīnglǐ*



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Practice different ways of introducing yourself in different situations (pp.8-9). Mention your name, occupation, and any other information you'd like to volunteer (pp.12-13, pp.14-15).

# BÀNGŌNGSHÌ

## The office

Traditionally, most adult Chinese would have a **sīzhāng**, an official seal or stamp bearing their name in characters. You may still see these stamps on official government papers and high-level contracts, although they are no longer the necessity they once were.

## 2 Words to remember (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words. Read them aloud several times and try to memorize them. Conceal the Chinese with the cover flap and test yourself.

计算机 computer  
*jìsuànjī*

鼠标 mouse  
*shǔbiāo*

电子邮件 email  
*diànzǐ yóujiàn*

因特网 internet  
*yīntèwǎng*

密码 password  
*mímǎ*

留言机 voicemail  
*liúyánjī*

Wi-Fi 密码 Wi-Fi password  
*Wi-Fi mímǎ*

复印 photocopy  
*fùyn*

复印机 photocopier  
*fùyīnjī*

书 book  
*shū*

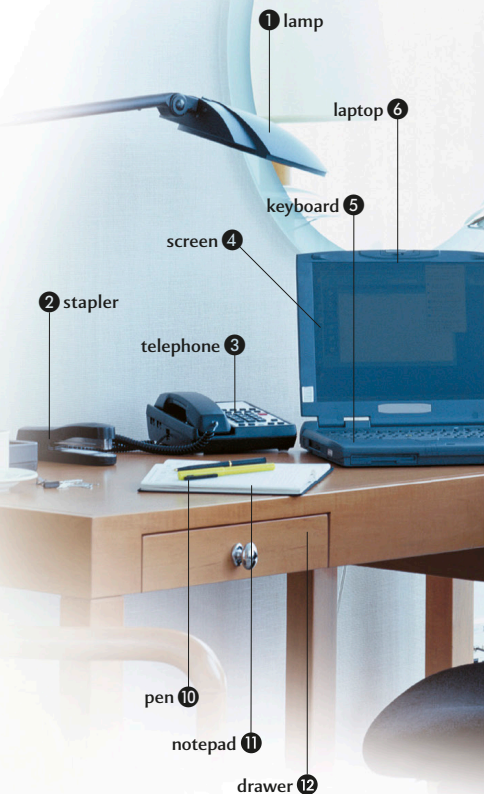
日志 planner  
*rìzhì*

名片 business card  
*míngpiàn*

会议 meeting  
*huìyì*

研讨会 conference  
*yántǎohuì*

会议日程 agenda  
*huìyì rìchéng*



### 3 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



I need to make some photocopies. 我需要复印资料。  
wǒ xūyào fù yìn zī liào



I'd like to arrange an appointment. 我想安排一次见面。  
wǒ xiǎng ān pái yī cì jiàn miàn



I want to send an email. 我要发送电子邮件。  
wǒ yào fā sòng diàn zǐ yóu jiàn

### 4 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the Chinese words on the right.

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

I'd like to arrange a meeting.

Do you have a laptop?

Is there an agenda?

7 desk

8 clock

printer 9

13 swivel chair

- ① 灯 *dēng*
- ② 订书机 *dìngshūjī*
- ③ 电话 *diànhuà*
- ④ 屏幕 *píngmù*
- ⑤ 键盘 *jiàn pán*
- ⑥ 笔记本电脑 *bǐjìběn diànnǎo*
- ⑦ 办公桌 *bàngōngzhuō*
- ⑧ 闹钟 *nàozhōng*
- ⑨ 打印机 *dǎyìnjī*
- ⑩ 笔 *bǐ*
- ⑪ 书写纸 *shūxiězhǐ*
- ⑫ 抽屉 *chōuti*
- ⑬ 座椅 *zuòyǐ*

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "Oh, I see!" (pp.78-79), "meeting" (pp.80-81), and "appointment." (pp.32-33)

Ask "What's your profession?" and answer "I'm a lawyer." (pp.78-79)

# ZÀI YÁNTǎOHUÌ SHÀNG

## At the conference

College courses usually last four years, and entrance to the top colleges is very competitive. High schools often start to prepare for the entrance exam many years in advance, as future prospects can depend on which college a student attends. Once there, the pressure is less intense.

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

您是搞什么专业的?  
*nín shì gǎo shénme zhuānyè de*

What's your field?



我是搞研究的。  
*wǒ shì gǎo yánjiū de*

I'm doing research.



我有法学学位。  
*wǒ yǒu fǎxué xuéwèi*

I have a degree in law.



我是建筑学讲师。  
*wǒ shì jiànzhùxué jiǎngshī*

I'm an associate professor of architecture.



## 3 In conversation (5 minutes)



你好，我是严俊盟。  
*nǐhǎo, wǒ shì yánjùnméng*

Hello, I'm Yan Junmeng.



您在哪个大学任教?  
*nín zài nǎgè dàxué rènjiào*

Which college do you teach at?



我在北京大学任教。  
*wǒ zài běijīng dàxué rènjiào*

I teach at Beijing University.

## 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself.



我们的展台在那边。  
wǒmen de zhǎntái zài nàbiān  
There's our exhibition stand.

conference 研讨会  
(academic) yántǎohuì

lecture 讲课  
jiǎngkè

seminar 讲座  
jiǎngzuò

lecture hall 教室  
jiàoshì

exhibition 展示会  
zhǎnshìhuì

associate professor 大学讲师  
dàxuéjiǎngshī

professor 教授  
jiàoshòu

medicine 医科  
yīkē

science 理科  
lǐkē

literature 文科  
wénkē

engineering 工科  
gōngkē

law 法律  
fǎlǜ

architecture 建筑学  
jiànzhúxué

information technology “IT”  
IT

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

I teach at London University.

I have a degree in medicine.

I'm an associate professor of engineering.



您是搞什么专业的?  
nín shì gǎo shénme  
zhuānyè de

What's your field?



物理学。我也做研究。  
wùlǐxué. wǒ yě zuò yánjiū

Physics. I'm also  
doing research.



哦，是这样。  
ò, shì zhèyàng

Oh, I see.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "I want to send an email." (pp.80-81)

Say "I'd like to arrange an appointment." (pp.80-81)

# QIÀTÁN YÈWÙ

## In business

You will make a good impression if you make the effort to begin a meeting with a few words in Chinese, even if your vocabulary is limited. After that, all parties will probably be happy to continue in English. Remember to take business cards to exchange at meetings.

## 2 Words to remember (6 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself by concealing the Chinese with the cover flap.

订单 *dīngdān* order

交付 *jiāofù* delivery

付款 *fùkuǎn* payment

预算 *yùsuàn* budget

价格 *jiàgé* price

文件 *wénjiàn* documents

发票 *fāpiào* invoice

估算 *gūsuàn* estimate

利润 *lìrùn* profits

销售 *xiāoshòu* sales

总计 *zǒngjì* figures

顾客  
*gùkè*  
client



报告书  
*bàogàoshū*  
report



**Cultural tip** In general, business dealings are formal. However, the Chinese are famous for their hospitality. There's always an exchange of gifts at the end of a business meeting, so don't forget to bring something from home to show your appreciation.



### 3 Useful phrases (6 minutes)

Practice these phrases. Note that the Chinese is necessarily very polite. It's better to err on the side of caution in a business context.

请给我看合同, 好吗?  
*qǐng gěi wǒ kàn hé tóng, hǎo ma*  
Please show me the contract.

总经理  
*zǒng jīng lǐ*  
managing  
director



Can you send me the contract, please?

请把合同送给我, 好吗?  
*qǐng bǎ hé tóng sòng gěi wǒ, hǎo ma*



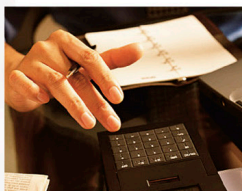
Have we agreed on a price?

我们商定价格了吗?  
*wǒmen shāng dìng jià gé le ma*



When can you make the delivery?

你们什么时候能交付?  
*nǐmen shén me shí hòu néng jiāo fù*



How much is the budget?

预算是多少?  
*yù suàn shì duō shǎo*

### 4 Say it (2 minutes)

Can you send me the invoice, please?

What's the price?

Please show me the order.

**Read it** Some Chinese characters often reoccur in different combinations. Two of these are 机 *jī*, meaning machine or device, and 电 *diàn*, meaning electric:

电话机 *diànhuà jī* telephone ("electric speaking machine")

电脑 *diànnǎo* computer ("electric brain")

电视机 *diànshì jī* television ("electric watching machine")

复印机 *fù yìn jī* photocopier ("copy machine")

打印机 *dǎ yìn jī* printer ("printing machine")

dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

# FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ

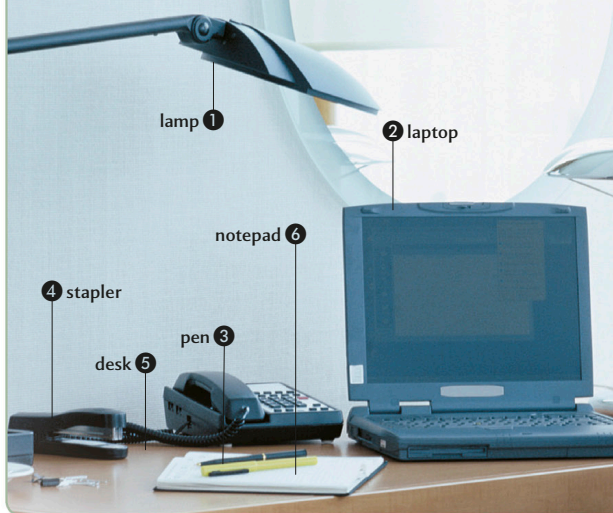
## Review and repeat

### 1 At the office

- ① 灯  
dēng
- ② 笔记本电脑  
bìjìběn diànnǎo
- ③ 笔  
bǐ
- ④ 订书机  
dìngshūjī
- ⑤ 办公桌  
bàngōngzhuō
- ⑥ 书写纸  
shūxiězhǐ
- ⑦ 闹钟  
nàozhōng

### 1 At the office (4 minutes)

Name these items in Chinese.



### 2 Jobs

- ① 医生  
yīshēng
- ② 管道工  
guǎndàogōng
- ③ 店主  
diànzhǔ
- ④ 会计师  
kuàijìshī
- ⑤ 学生  
xuéshēng
- ⑥ 律师  
lǜshī

### 2 Jobs (3 minutes)

What are these jobs in Chinese?

- ① doctor
- ② plumber
- ③ shopkeeper
- ④ accountant
- ⑤ student
- ⑥ lawyer



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap



## 3 Work (4 minutes)

Answer these questions following the English prompts.

nín zuò shénme gōngzuò

① Say "I'm a dentist."

nín zài nǎ gè gōngsī gōngzuò

② Say "I'm self-employed."

nín zài nǎ gè dàxué rènjiào

③ Say "I teach at Beijing University."

wéi, wǒ shì zǒngjī

④ Say "I'd like to arrange an appointment."

## 3 Work

① 我是牙医。

wǒ shì yáiyī

② 我是个个体户。

wǒ shì gètǐhù

③ 我在北京大学任教。

wǒ zài běijīng dàxué  
rènjiào

④ 我想安排一次见面。

wǒ xiǎng ānpái yīcì  
jiànmiàn

## 4 How much? (4 minutes)

Answer the question with the price shown in brackets.



① kāfēi duō shǎo qián  
(¥30)



② fángjiān duō shǎo qián  
(¥800)



③ diànnǎo duō shǎo qián  
(¥10,000)



④ chēpiào duō shǎo qián  
(¥70)

## 4 How much?

① 三十元

sānshí yuán

② 八百元

bābǎi yuán

③ 一万元

yīwàn yuán

④ 七十元

qīshí yuán

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "Can you give me the receipt?" (pp.68-69)

Ask "Do you have any cakes?" (pp.18-19)

# ZÀI YÀOFÁNG

## At the pharmacy

You may be asked **nǎi bù shūfu** (what's the matter?). To describe an ailment, you can use the phrase **wǒ ... téng** (I have a ... ache): **wǒ tóu téng** (I have a headache); **wǒ wèi téng** (I have a stomachache). Notice that the ailment or part of the body appears in the middle of the sentence.

## 2 Match and repeat (3 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the Chinese words in the panel on the left and test yourself using the cover flap.

- ① 绷带  
bēngdài
- ② 糖浆  
tángjiāng
- ③ 药水  
yàoshuǐ
- ④ 创可贴  
chuàngkětīe
- ⑤ 注射器  
zhùshèqì
- ⑥ 药片  
yàopiàn
- ⑦ 栓剂  
shuānjì
- ⑧ 药膏  
yàogāo



## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



你好，哪里不舒服？  
*nǐhǎo, nǎlǐ bù shūfu*

Hello. What's the matter?



我胃疼。  
*wǒ wèi téng*

I have a stomachache.



你拉肚子吗？  
*nǐ lādùzi ma*

Do you also have diarrhea?

## 4 Words to remember (2 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.



我头疼  
wǒ tóutēng  
I have a headache.

headache 头疼  
tóutēng

stomachache 胃疼  
wèitēng

diarrhea 拉肚子  
lādùzi

cold 感冒  
gǎnmào

cough 咳嗽  
késou

fever 发烧  
fāshāo

toothache 牙疼  
yátēng

## 6 Say it (2 minutes)

I have a toothache.

I have a cough.

Do you have that  
as an ointment?

7 suppository

6 tablet

## 5 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself  
using the cover flap.

I have a leg ache. 我腿疼。  
wǒ tuǐ téng

Do you have that  
as a syrup? 这种药有糖浆型吗?  
zhè zhǒng yào yǒu  
tángjiāng xíng ma

I'm allergic to penicillin. 我对青霉素过敏。  
wǒ duì qīngméisù  
guòmǐn



我不拉肚子，但是头疼。  
wǒ bù lādùzi, dànshì  
tóutēng

No I don't, but I have  
a headache.



吃这种药。  
chī zhè zhǒng yào

Take this.



这种药有药片型吗?  
zhè zhǒng yào yǒu  
yàopiàn xíng ma

Do you have that  
as tablets?



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say “I have a toothache” and “I have leg ache.” (pp.88-89)

Ask “What’s the matter?” (pp.88-89)

# SHĒNTǐ BÙWÈI

## The body

Most parts of the body have more than one word used to refer to them in Chinese. For example, **shǒubì** (arm) is also called **gēbo**, and **fù** (stomach) is also called **dùzi**. The words below are universally understood. Remember there is no plural, so **yǎn** is eye or eyes and **jiǎo** is foot or feet.

## 2 Match and repeat: body (6 minutes)

Match the numbered parts of the body with the list on the left. Test yourself by using the cover flap.

- 1 手  
shǒu
- 2 头  
tóu
- 3 肩膀  
jiǎnbǎng
- 4 肘  
zhǒu
- 5 头发  
tóufa
- 6 手臂  
shǒubì
- 7 脖子  
bózi
- 8 胸  
xiōng
- 9 腹  
fù
- 10 腿  
tuǐ
- 11 膝  
xī
- 12 脚  
jiǎo



### 3 Match and repeat: face (3 minutes)

Match the numbered facial features with the list on the right.



- ① 眼  
yǎn
- ② 眉  
méi
- ③ 鼻子  
bízi
- ④ 耳朵  
ěrduo
- ⑤ 嘴  
zuǐ

### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



I have backache. 我背疼。  
wǒ bèi téng



I have a rash on my arm. 我手臂上有疹子。  
wǒ shǒubì shàng yǒu zhēnzi



I don't feel well. 我感觉不舒服。  
wǒ gǎnjué bù shūfu

### 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Join in this conversation and test yourself using the cover flap.



哪里不舒服? 我感觉不舒服。  
nǎlǐ bù shūfu wǒ gǎnjué bù shūfu  
What's the matter?

Say: I don't feel well.



哪里疼? 我肩膀疼。  
nǎlǐ téng wǒ jiānbǎng téng  
Where does it hurt?

Say: I have an ache in my shoulder.

# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "I have a headache." (pp.88-89)

Now say "I have an earache." (pp.90-91)

Ask "What's the matter?" (pp.88-89)

## KÀN YĪSHÈNG With the doctor

Most Chinese doctors are based in hospitals rather than in separate clinics. You will usually need to go to a hospital for an appointment, even for minor ailments. Many Chinese doctors speak good English, but you could need to give a basic explanation in Chinese, for example, to a receptionist.

# 2 Useful phrases you may hear (3 minutes)

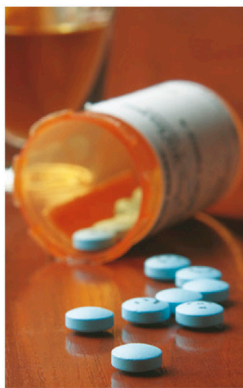
Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the Chinese on the left.

不严重。 It's not serious.  
*bù yánzhòng*

需要化验。 Tests are needed.  
*xūyào huàyàn*

你骨折了。 You have a fracture.  
*nǐ gǔzhé le*

你需要住院。 You need to stay  
in the hospital.  
*nǐ xūyào zhùyuàn*



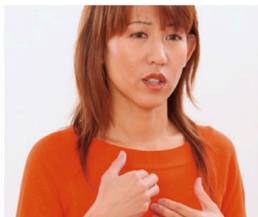
你是不是在服药?  
*nǐ shìbúshì zài fúyào*  
Are you taking  
any medication?

# 3 In conversation (5 minutes)



哪里不舒服?  
*nǎlǐ bù shūfu*

What's the matter?



我胸疼。  
*wǒ xiōng téng*

I have a pain in  
my chest.



让我听听。  
*ràng wǒ tīngtīng*

I'll need to examine you.

## 4 Useful phrases you may need to say (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



我怀孕了。  
wǒ huáiyùn le  
I'm pregnant.

I have diabetes. 我有糖尿病。  
wǒ yǒu tángniàobìng

I have epilepsy. 我有癫痫症。  
wǒ yǒu diānxiánzhèng

I have asthma. 我有哮喘病。  
wǒ yǒu xiàochuǎnbìng

I have a heart condition. 我有心脏病。  
wǒ yǒu xīnzàngbìng

I have a fever. 我发烧了。  
wǒ fāshāo le

It's urgent. 我要看急诊。  
wǒ yào kàn jízhěn

I feel breathless. 我感觉呼吸困难。  
wǒ gǎnjué hūxī kùnnán

### Cultural tip

There are separate emergency numbers in China, depending on the service you require. Dial 110 for the police, 122 for an ambulance, and 119 for the fire service.



## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

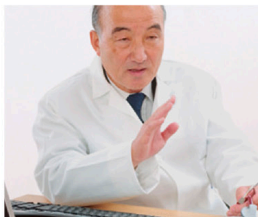
I have a pain in my arm.

Is it urgent?



严重吗?  
yánzhòng ma

Is it serious?



不严重。只是消化不良。  
bù yánzhòng. zhǐshì  
xiāohuàbùliáng

It's not serious. You  
only have indigestion.



噢，那我就放心了。  
ō, nà wǒ jiù fàngxīn le

Oh! What a relief.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "Where's the florist?" (pp.68-69)

Say "Tests are needed." (pp.92-93)

What is the Chinese for "mouth" and "head"? (pp.90-91)

# ZÀI YĪYUÀN

## In the hospital

It is useful to know a few basic Chinese phrases relating to hospitals for use in an emergency or in case you need to visit a friend or colleague in the hospital. Chinese medical care is not always available to foreigners, so make sure you have adequate insurance.

## 2 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these phrases. Conceal the Chinese with the cover flap and test yourself.

候诊室在哪里?  
*hòuzhěnshì zài nǎlǐ*

Where's the waiting room?

需要多久?  
*xūyào duōjiǔ*

How long does it take?

疼吗?  
*téng ma*

Will it hurt?

请躺在床上。  
*qǐng tǎng zài chuáng shàng*

Please lie down on the bed.

六小时之内请不要吃东西。  
*liù xiǎoshí zhīnèi qǐng bú yào chī dōngxi*

Please do not eat anything for six hours.

头不要动。  
*tóu bú yào dòng*

Don't move your head.

张开嘴。  
*zhāng kāi zuǐ*

Open your mouth.

需要验血。  
*xūyào yànxuè*

A blood test is needed.

护士  
*hùshī*  
nurse



你感觉好些吗?  
*nǐ gǎnjué hǎoxiē ma*  
Are you feeling better?

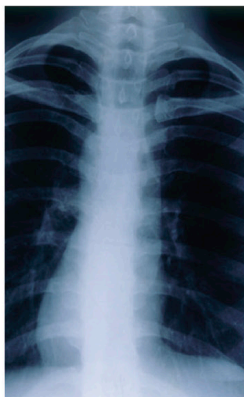


探望时间是几点钟?  
*tànwàng shíjiān shì jǐdiǎnzhōng*  
What are the visiting hours?



### 3 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Memorize these words and test yourself using the cover flap.



X光正常。  
*X-guāng zhèngcháng*  
The X-ray is normal.

emergency room	急诊室 <i>jízhěnshì</i>
children's ward	小儿病房 <i>xiǎo'ér bìngfáng</i>
operating room	手术室 <i>shǒushùshì</i>
waiting room	候诊室 <i>hòuzhěnsì</i>
corridor	走廊 <i>zǒuláng</i>
stairs	楼梯 <i>lóutī</i>
elevator	电梯 <i>diàntī</i>

### 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by hiding the answers with the cover flap.



不严重。需要化验吗?  
*bù yánzhòng xūyào huàyàn ma*  
It's not serious.

Ask: Are tests needed?



需要验血。疼吗?  
*xūyào yànxuè téng ma*  
A blood test is needed.

Ask: Will it hurt?

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Is a blood test needed?

Where's the children's ward?

An X-ray is needed.

#### Read it

The character for sickness is 病 *bìng*. So 病房 *bìngfáng* (sickness room) is a ward, and 病人 *bìngrén* (sick person) is a patient. It's also useful to be able to recognize the Chinese characters for hospital. This literally means medical building: 医院 *yīyuàn*.

## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

# FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ

## Review and repeat

## 1 The body

- ① 头  
tóu
- ② 手臂  
shǒubì
- ③ 胸  
xiōng
- ④ 腹  
fù
- ⑤ 腿  
tuǐ
- ⑥ 膝  
xī
- ⑦ 脚  
jiǎo

## 1 The body (4 minutes)

Name the numbered body parts in Chinese.



## 2 On the phone

- ① 请给我接王先生的电话。  
qǐng gěi wǒ jiē wáng xiānsheng de diànhuà
- ② 我是大通印刷厂的杰克·亨特  
wǒ shì dàtōng yìnshuā chǎng de jiékè-hēngtè
- ③ 我可以给他留言吗?  
wǒ kěyǐ gěi tā liúyán ma
- ④ 会议不是星期四。  
huìyì búshì xīngqīsi
- ⑤ 谢谢你。  
xièxie nǐ

## 2 On the phone (4 minutes)

You are arranging an appointment. Follow the conversation, replying in Chinese following the English prompts.

- wéi, wǒ shì zǒngjī
- ① I'd like to speak to Mr. Wang.
  - nín shì shéi ya
  - ② I'm Jack Hunt of Tatong Printing.
  - duìbuqǐ, diànhuà zhànxiàn
  - ③ Can I leave a message?
  - dāngrán
  - ④ The meeting isn't on Tuesday.
  - hěnhǎo
  - ⑤ Thank you.



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 3 Clothing (3 minutes)

Say the Chinese words for the numbered items of clothing.



## 3 Clothing

- ① 夹克衫  
jiákèshān
- ② 领带  
lǐngdài
- ③ 裤子  
kùzi
- ④ 鞋子  
xiézi
- ⑤ 裤袜  
kùwà
- ⑥ 裙子  
qúnzi

## 4 At the doctor's (4 minutes)

Say these phrases in Chinese.

- ① I have a pain in my leg.
- ② Is it serious?
- ③ I have a heart condition.
- ④ Will it hurt?
- ⑤ I'm pregnant.



## 4 At the doctor's

- ① 我腿疼。  
wǒ tuǐ téng
- ② 严重吗?  
yánzhòng ma
- ③ 我有心脏病。  
wǒ yǒu xīnzàng bìng
- ④ 疼吗?  
téng ma
- ⑤ 我怀孕了。  
wǒ huáiyùn le

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say the months of the year in Chinese.  
(pp.28-29)

Ask “Is there a museum nearby?” (pp.48-49) and “How much is that?” (pp.18-19)

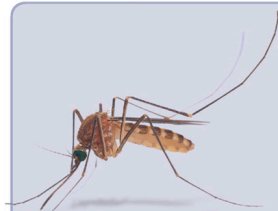
# JIĀ Lǐ Home

In the bigger Chinese cities, space is limited and most urban Chinese traditionally live in apartments (*gōngyù*). More recently, however, affluent suburbs have sprung up on the outskirts, accommodating successful entrepreneurs and business owners in large houses and Western-style estates.

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the list and test yourself using the flap.

- ① 天沟  
*tiāngōu*
- ② 阳台  
*yángtái*
- ③ 窗户  
*chuānghù*
- ④ 雨帘  
*yǔlián*
- ⑤ 屋顶  
*wǔdǐng*
- ⑥ 墙  
*qiáng*
- ⑦ 门  
*mén*
- ⑧ 台阶  
*táijiē*
- ⑨ 花园  
*huāyuán*



**Cultural tip** Features of buildings in China vary depending on the area, the climate, and the building materials available. In the north, heating is important, whereas in central and southern provinces, air-conditioning is a must. One almost universal feature is the presence of mosquito nets on doors (*shāmén*) and windows (*shāchuāng*).

### 3 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.



房租每月多少钱?  
fángzū měiyuè duōshǎoqián  
How much is the rent per month?

5 roof

wall 6

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Is there a dining room?  
Where's the kitchen?  
It's furnished.

room 房间  
fángjiān

floor 地板  
dìbǎn

ceiling 天花板  
tiānhuábǎn

bedroom 卧室  
wòshì

bathroom 卫生间  
wèishēngjiān

kitchen 厨房  
chúfáng

dining room 餐厅  
cāntīng

living room 客厅  
kètīng

attic 阁楼  
gélóu

parking space 车库  
chēkù

### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and test yourself.



有车库吗?  
yǒu chēkù ma

Is there a parking space?



我什么时候能搬进来?  
wǒ shénme shíhòu  
néng bān jìn lái

When can I move in?



家具齐全吗?  
jiājù qíquán ma

Is it furnished?



# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What's the Chinese for "table" (pp.20-21), "desk" (pp.80-81), "bed" (pp.60-61), and "curtains"? (pp.60-61)

How do you say "This car is small"? (pp.64-65)

# WŪ NÈI Inside the home

The Chinese often end their sentences with short "markers" that don't really change the meaning but carry different nuances. For example, the **yo** marker can imply *and even* or *to be sure* and **ne** can mean something like *isn't that so?* You'll see examples of these in the conversation below.

# 2 Match and repeat (3 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the list in the panel on the left. Then test yourself by concealing the Chinese with the cover flap.

- ① 水池  
shuǐchí
- ② 水龙头  
shuǐlóngtóu
- ③ 电饭煲  
diànfàn bāo
- ④ 厨台  
chútái
- ⑤ 洗碗机  
xǐwǎnjī
- ⑥ 椅子  
yǐzi
- ⑦ 柜橱  
guìchú
- ⑧ 桌子  
zhuōzi

countertop ④

dishwasher ⑤

chair ⑥

cabinet ⑦

table ⑧

① sink faucet ②

# 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



这是冰箱。  
zhè shì bīngxiāng

This is the refrigerator.



有电饭煲吗?  
yǒu diànfàn bāo ma

Is there a rice cooker?



有。那是炉灶。  
yǒu. nà shì lú zào

Yes, there is. And here's the stove.

## 4 Words to remember (2 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.



沙发是新的呢。  
*shāfā shì xīn de ne*  
This sofa is new.

3 rice cooker



sofa 沙发  
*shāfā*

carpet 地毯  
*dìtǎn*

bathtub 浴缸  
*yùgāng*

toilet 洗手间  
*xǐshǒujiān*

stove 炉灶  
*lúzhào*

washing machine 洗衣机  
*xǐyījī*

refrigerator 冰箱  
*bīngxiāng*

## 5 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the Chinese.

I'm not fond of the curtains. 我不喜欢这种窗帘。  
*wǒ bù xǐhuān zhèzhǒng chuānglián*

The refrigerator is broken. 冰箱坏了。  
*bīngxiāng huài le*

Are heat and electricity included? 包含供暖和供电吗?  
*bāohán gǒngnuǎn hé gòngdiàn ma*

## 6 Say it (2 minutes)

Is there a washing machine?

The refrigerator is new.

The faucet is broken.



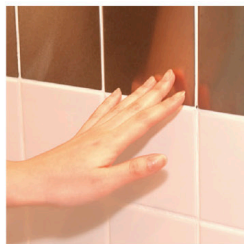
水池是新的呢。  
*shuǐchí shì xīn de ne*

The sink is new.



还有洗碗机呢。  
*hái yǒu xǐwǎnjī ne*

And there's even a dishwasher.



瓷砖真好看哟。  
*cízhuān zhēn hǎokàn yo*

What pretty tiles!

# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What's the Chinese for "day" and "month"? (pp.28-29)

Say "Where's the florist?" (pp.68-69) and "Is there a garden?" (pp.98-99)

# HUĀYUÁN

## The garden

Chinese gardens, often with water features and plants like pine trees and bamboos, can be seen in public places such as parks, pagodas, and hotels. Space constraints mean that many Chinese homes don't have their own gardens, but houseplants and flower arrangements are popular.

# 2 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

春 spring  
*chūn*

夏 summer  
*xià*

秋 fall  
*qiū*

冬 winter  
*dōng*

pagoda 1

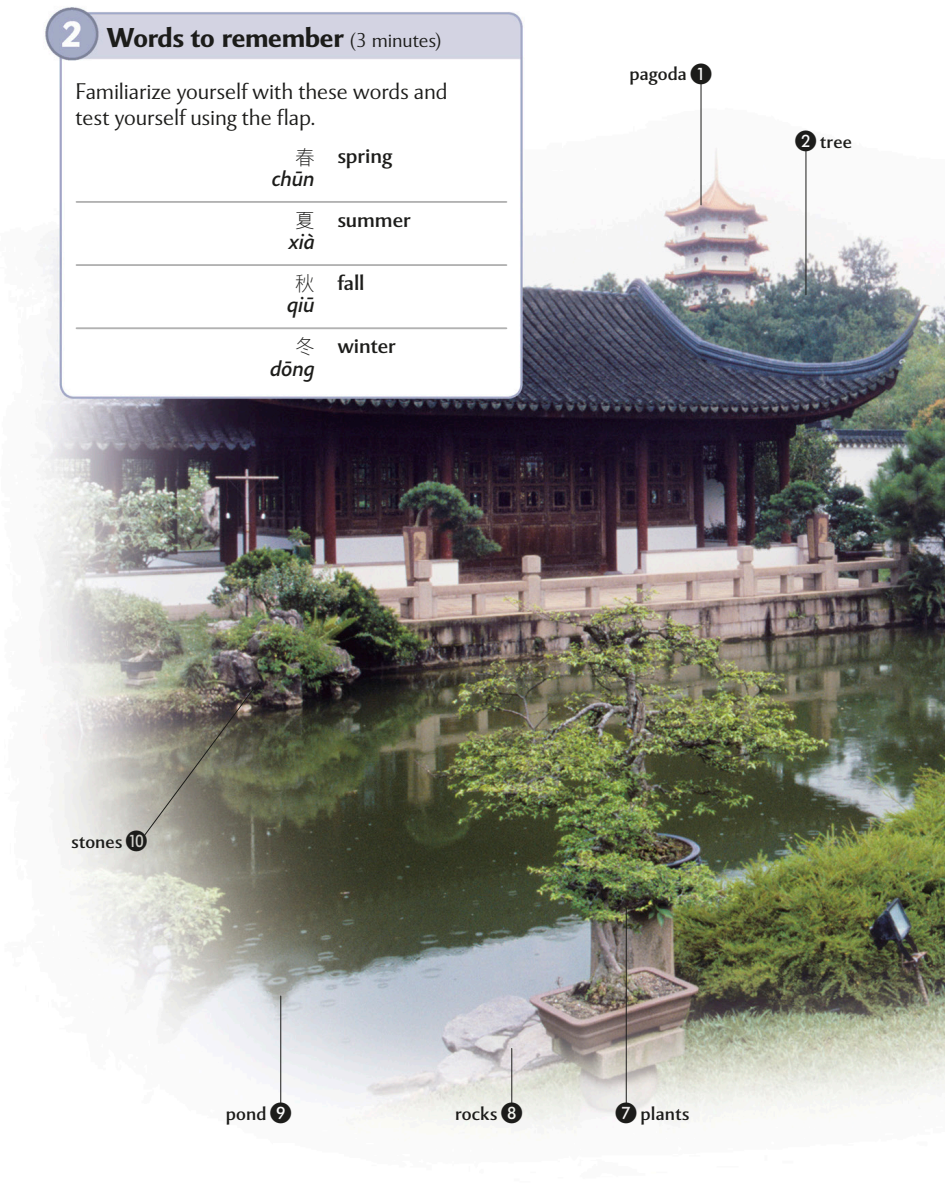
2 tree

stones 10

pond 9

rocks 8

7 plants



### 3 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



What kind of tree is this? 这是什么树?  
zhè shì shénme shù



I like the pond. 我喜欢这个池塘。  
wǒ xǐhuān zhè gè chítáng



What beautiful flowers! 花儿真好看。  
huār zhēn hǎokàn



Can we walk in the garden? 我们去花园散步, 好吗?  
wǒmen qù huāyuán sànbù, hǎo ma

### 4 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the words in the panel on the right.

3 soil

4 flowers

5 grass

6 path

1 宝塔  
bǎotǎ

2 树  
shù

3 土  
tǔ

4 花儿  
huār

5 草  
cǎo

6 小路  
xiǎolù

7 植物  
zhíwù

8 岩石  
yánshí

9 池塘  
chítáng

10 石头  
shítou

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

What kind of flower is this?

I like the pagoda.

Is there a pond?



# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "My name is John."  
(pp.8-9)

Say "I like the pond."  
(pp.102-03)

What's "fish" in Chinese?  
(pp.22-23)

# DÒNGWÙ Animals

The Chinese tend to keep small dogs, such as Pekingese, and sometimes cats in the house as pets. Birds and fish are also very popular. Keeping pets is generally becoming more popular, although official licenses are required, which can be expensive.

## 2 Match and repeat (3 minutes)

Match the numbered animals to the Chinese words in the panel on the left. Then test yourself using the cover flap.

① 猫  
māo

② 鸟  
niǎo

③ 鱼  
yú

④ 狗  
gǒu

⑤ 马  
mǎ

cat ①

bird ②

fish ③

⑤ horse

dog ④

## 3 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

别担心, 他很亲热人。 Don't worry. He's friendly.  
*bié dānxīn, tā hěn qīnrè rén*

它叫什么名字? What's his name?  
*tā jiào shénme míngzì*

我不喜欢猫。 I'm not fond of cats.  
*wǒ bù xǐhuān māo*

这狗不咬人。 This dog doesn't bite.  
*zhè gǒu bù yǎo rén*



这是你家的猫吗?  
*zhè shì nǐ jiā de māo ma*  
Is this your cat?



**Cultural tip** Some buildings and big houses will keep larger dogs outside as guard dogs. These are known for their toughness and are treated as “yard” dogs rather than as pets. Look out for the *Beware of the dog* (*xiǎoxīn yǒu gǒu*) sign.

小心有狗  
Beware of the Dog

#### 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.



这是什么鱼?  
*zhè shì shénme yú*  
What kind of fish is this?

monkey 猴  
*hóu*

sheep 羊  
*yáng*

cow 牛  
*niú*

pig 猪  
*zhū*

rabbit 兔  
*tù*

tiger 虎  
*hǔ*



**Read it** Most basic words referring to natural features or animals, such as “tree,” “dog,” “flower,” “cow,” etc., are written with just a single character. Look at the characters for animals and natural features in week 10 and see if you can spot them in the phrases.

#### 5 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.



这是你家的狗吗? 是的。它的名字叫果果。  
*zhè shì nǐ jiā de gǒu ma shì de. tā de míngzì*  
Is this your dog? *jiào guǒguo*

Say: Yes, his name  
is Guoguo.



我不喜欢狗。别担心，它很亲热人。  
*wǒ bù xǐhuān gǒu bié dānxīn, tā hěn qīnrè rén*  
I'm not fond of dogs.

Say: Don't worry.  
He's friendly.

## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

FÙXÍ Yǔ LIÀNXÍ  
Review and repeat

## 1 Colors

- ① 白 *bái*
- ② 黄 *huáng*
- ③ 绿 *lǜ*
- ④ 黑 *hēi*
- ⑤ 红 *hóng*
- ⑥ 蓝 *lán*
- ⑦ 粉红 *fěnhóng*

## 1 Colors (4 minutes)

What are these colors in Chinese?

- ① white
- ② yellow
- ③ green
- ④ black
- ⑤ red
- ⑥ blue
- ⑦ pink



## 2 Kitchen

- ① 厨房 *chúfáng*
- ② 水池 *shuǐchí*
- ③ 水龙头 *shuǐlóngtóu*
- ④ 电饭煲 *diànfàn bāo*
- ⑤ 洗碗机 *xǐwǎnjī*
- ⑥ 椅子 *yǐzi*
- ⑦ 柜橱 *guǐchú*
- ⑧ 桌子 *zhuōzi*

## 2 Kitchen (4 minutes)

Say the Chinese words for the numbered items.



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 3 House (4 minutes)

You are visiting a house in China. Join in the conversation, replying in Chinese where you see the English prompts.

zhè shì wèishēngjiān

① What pretty tiles!

zhè shì guànxǐshì

② Is there a washing machine?

yǒu xīyījī

③ Is there a parking space?

méi yǒu chēkù, yǒu huāyuán

④ Is it furnished?

jiājù qíquán

⑤ How much is the rent per month?



## 3 House

① 瓷砖真好看哟

cízhuān zhēn  
hǎokàn yo

② 有洗衣机吗?

yǒu xīyījī ma

③ 有车库吗?

yǒu chēkù ma

④ 家具齐全吗?

jiājù qíquán ma

⑤ 房租每月多少钱?

fángzū měiyuè  
duōshǎo qián

## 4 At home (3 minutes)

Say the Chinese for the following items.

① washing machine

② sofa

③ attic

④ dining room

⑤ tree

⑥ garden



⑦ cabinet

⑥ chair



## 4 At home

① 洗衣机

xīyījī

② 沙发

shāfā

③ 阁楼

gélóu

④ 餐厅

cāntīng

⑤ 树

shù

⑥ 花园

huāyuán

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Ask "How do I get to the station?" and "Where's the post office?" (pp.50-51 and pp.68-69)

What's the Chinese for "passport"? (pp.54-55)

Ask "What time is it?" (pp.30-31)

# YÓUJÚ HÉ Yínháng

## Post office and bank

Post office signs or buildings and mailboxes are painted green in China. Most banks are open for business on Sundays. Only the Bank of China handles currency exchange, and their ATMs allow foreign bank cards to withdraw Chinese currency (*rénmínbì*) up to certain limits.

## 2 Words to remember: mail (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the Chinese on the left.

邮局  
*yóujú* post office

信件  
*xìnjiàn* letter

信封  
*xinfēng* envelope

邮包  
*yóubāo* parcel

航空邮件  
*hángkōng yóujiàn* air mail

邮票  
*yóupiào* stamps

邮递员  
*yóudìyuán* mail carrier

邮箱  
*yóuxiāng* mailbox

明信片  
*míngxìnpiàn*  
postcard

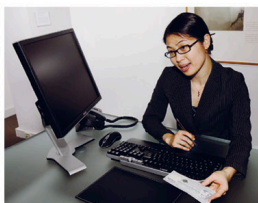


## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



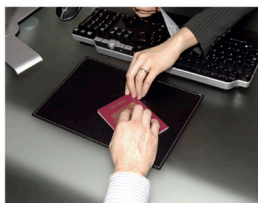
请给我兑换现金，好吗？  
*qǐng gěiwǒ duìhuàn xiànjīn, hǎo ma*

I'd like to change some money.



您有身份证吗？  
*nín yǒu shēnfènzhèng ma*

Do you have any identification?



有。这是我的护照。  
*yǒu, zhè shì wǒde hùzhào*

Yes, I do. Here's my passport.

## 4 Words to remember: bank (2 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the Chinese on the right.

信用卡  
xìnyòngkǎ  
credit card



我能用信用卡付款吗?  
wǒ néng yòng xìnyòngkǎ  
fùkuǎn ma  
Can I pay with a credit card?

bank 银行  
yínháng

money 钱  
qián

teller/cashier 柜员  
guìyuán

bills (banknotes) 纸币  
zhǐbì

coins 硬币  
yìngbì

ATM 自动提款机  
zìdòng tíkuǎnjī

exchange rate 汇率  
huìlǜ

## 5 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

I'd like to change some money, please. 请给我换点钱, 好吗?  
qǐng gěi wǒ huàn diǎn qián, hǎo ma

## 6 Say it (2 minutes)

I'd like to change some dollars.

Here's my credit card.

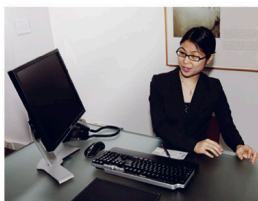
Where's the mailbox?

What is the exchange rate? 汇率是多少?  
huìlǜ shì duōshǎo

Where's the ATM? 哪里有自动提款机?  
nǎlǐ yǒu zìdòng tíkuǎnjī



请在这里签字。  
qǐng zài zhèlǐ qiānzì  
Please sign here.



您要多大面值的纸币?  
nín yào duōdà miànzhí de zhǐbì

How would you like the bills?



请给我100元面值的。  
qǐng gěi wǒ yībǎi yuán miànzhí de

I'd like 100-yuan bills, please.



## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What is the Chinese for "The refrigerator is broken"? (pp.100-01)

What's the Chinese for "today" and "tomorrow"? (pp.28-29)

Say "Thank you."  
(pp.40-41)

# XIŪLǐ Repairs

You can combine the Chinese words on these pages with the vocabulary you learned in week 10 to help you explain basic problems and cope with arranging most repairs. Rented lodging is usually arranged via agents, known as 租房中介 **zūfáng zhōngjiè**. They can also help with problems.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

管道工 plumber  
*guǎndàogōng*

电工 electrician  
*diàngōng*

机械师 mechanic  
*jīxièshī*

修理工 handyman  
*xiūlǐgōng*

木匠 carpenter  
*mùjiàng*

电脑修理店 computer repair shop  
*diànnǎo xiūlǐdiàn*

清洁工 cleaner  
*qīngjiégōng*

厨师 cook  
*chúshī*



我想请一名机械师。  
*wǒ xiǎng qǐng yī míng jīxièshī*  
I need a mechanic.

## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



早上好。我是韩红。  
*zǎoshàng hǎo. wǒ shì hán hóng*

Good morning. This is Han Hong.



早上好。有什么问题吗?  
*zǎoshàng hǎo. yǒu shénme wèntí ma*

Good morning. Is there a problem?



洗碗机坏了。  
*xǐwǎnjī huài le*

The dishwasher is broken.

## 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



哪里才能修理它呢?  
*nǎlǐ cái néng xiūlǐ tā ne*  
Where can I get this repaired?

Please clean the room. 请整理房间吧。  
*qǐng zhěnglǐ fángjiān ba*

Can you repair the television? 你能修理电视机吗?  
*nǐ néng xiūlǐ diànshìjī ma*

Can you recommend a good handyman? 你能推荐一个好的修理工吗?  
*nǐ néng tuījiàn yīgè hǎo de xiūlǐgōng ma*

## 5 Put into practice (4 minutes)

Cover up the text on the right and complete the dialogue in Chinese.



今天能修理。  
*jīntiān néng xiūlǐ*  
It's possible to repair it today.

您的光驱坏了。 你能推荐一个好的  
*nín de guāngqū huài le* 电脑修理店吗?  
Your CD drive is broken. *nǐ néng tuījiàn yīgè hǎo de diànnǎo xiūlǐ diàn ma*

Ask: Can you recommend a good computer repair shop?

街上有一家。 谢谢你。  
*jiēshàng yǒu yíjiā* *xièxie nǐ*  
There's one in town.

Say: Thank you.



我们会派一名修理工去。  
*wǒmen huì pài yí míng xiūlǐ gōng qù*

We'll send a handyman.



今天就派，好吗?  
*jīntiān jiù pài, hǎo ma*

Can you do it today, please?



对不起。明天上午派。  
*duìbuqǐ. míngtiān shàngwǔ pài*

Sorry. But it will be tomorrow morning.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say the days of the week in Chinese. (pp.28-29)

How do you say “cleaner”? (pp.110-11)

Say “It’s 9:30,” “10:45,” and “12:00.” (pp.30-31)

# LÁI

## To come

Chinese verbs generally do not change with the subject (I, you, he, she, we, they). Sometimes, however, these verbs need to be followed by time-indicating characters. Below, you will see some of these changes for the verb 来 *lái* (to come).

## 2 Useful phrases (6 minutes)

Say the different forms of *lái* (to come) aloud. Use the cover flap to test yourself and, when you are confident, practice the sample sentences below.

来 <i>lái</i>	to come (infinitive)
来了 <i>lái le</i>	come/coming (present)
不来了 <i>bù lái le</i>	not come/coming (present negative)
来过 <i>lái guò</i>	came (past)
没来过 <i>méi lái guò</i>	didn't come (past negative)
来吧 <i>lái ba</i>	Please come! (invitation)
公共汽车来了。 <i>gōnggòngqìchē lái le</i>	The bus is coming.
木匠9点钟来过。 <i>mùjiàng jiǔ diǎnzhōng lái guò</i>	The carpenter came at nine o'clock.
清洁工今天没来过。 <i>qīngjiégōng jīntiān méi lái guò</i>	The cleaner didn't come today.
我明天来。 <i>wǒ míngtiān lái</i>	I'll come tomorrow.



他们乘火车来。  
*tāmen chéng huǒchē lái*  
They're coming by train.



### Conversational tip

Beware of English phrases using “come” that translate differently in Chinese. For example, the Chinese equivalent of *I come from Canada* would be *wǒ shì jiānádà rén*, which translates literally as *I am Canada person*.

### 3 Invitations (4 minutes)

You can use *lái* (come) for invitations. There are different expressions, depending on the level of formality.



请来参加我的生日晚会吧。  
*qǐng lái cānjiā wǒde  
shēngrì wǎnhuì ba*

Please come to my birthday party.



星期一您能不能来  
我们的接待室?  
*xīngqīyī nín néngbùnéng lái  
wǒmen de jiēdàishì*

On Monday, can you come to our reception?  
(formal)



星期五您能不能来  
参加我们的座谈会?  
*xīngqīwǔ nín néngbùnéng  
lái cānjiā wǒmen de  
zuótánhuì*

On Friday, can you come to join our seminar?  
(formal)



来参加我的晚宴吧!  
*lái cānjiā wǒde wǎnyàn ba*

Come to my dinner party!  
(informal)

### 4 Put into practice (4 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the Chinese on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.



喂, 你好。  
*wéi, nǐhǎo*  
Hello.

你好。请来参加我的生日晚会吧。  
*nǐhǎo. qǐng lái cānjiā wǒde  
shēngrì wǎnhuì ba*

Say: Hello. Please come to my birthday party.



晚会什么时候开始?  
*wǎnhuì shénme shíhòu kāishǐ*  
What time does the party begin?

明天晚上8点。  
*míngtiān wǎnshàng bādiǎn*

Say: Eight o'clock, tomorrow evening.



好。我一定来。  
*hǎo. wǒ yīdìng lái*  
Yes, I'd love to come.

明天见。  
*míngtiān jiàn*

Say: See you tomorrow.

# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What's the Chinese for "tall" and "short"? (pp.64-65)

Say "The room is big" and "The bed is small." (pp.64-65)

# JǐNGCHÁ Yǔ FÀNZUÌ

## Police and crime

Chinese police cars have the two characters 公安 *gōng'ān* (public security) or 交警 *jiāojǐng* (traffic police) displayed. Note that the terms *nánrén* (man) and *nǚrén* (woman) in section 4 are not very polite, as they refer to criminal suspects. More polite equivalents would be *nánshì* and *nǚshì*.

# 2 Words to remember: crime (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

扒手 thief/burglar  
*páshǒu*

警方报告 police report  
*jǐngfāng bàogào*

证词 statement  
*zhèngcí*

证人 witness  
*zhèngrén*

目击者 eyewitness  
*mùjīzhě*

律师 lawyer  
*lǚshī*

警官 police officer  
*jǐnguān*



我需要请律师。  
*wǒ xūyào qǐng lǚshī*  
I need a lawyer.

# 3 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

我的手袋被偷了。 I've been  
*wǒ de shǒudài bèi tōu le* pickpocketed.

丢失了什么? What was stolen?  
*diūshī le shénme*

你看见是谁偷的吗? Did you see who  
*nǐ kànjiàn shì shéi tōu de ma* did it?

什么时候发生的? When did it happen?  
*shénme shíhòu fāshēng de*



照相机  
*zhàoxiàngjī*  
camera



钱  
*qián*  
money

钱包  
*qiánbāo*  
wallet

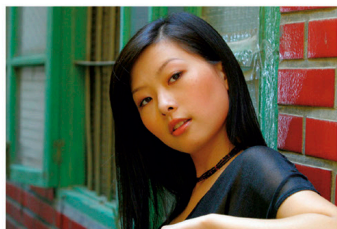


## 4 Words to remember: appearance (5 minutes)

Learn these words and then test yourself using the cover flap.



那男人棕色头发，戴眼镜。  
nà nánrén zōngsè tóufa, dàiǎnjìng  
The man had brown hair and glasses.



那女人很高，长头发。  
nà nǚrén hěn gāo, cháng tóufa  
The woman was tall and had long hair.

man/men	男人 nánrén
woman/women	女人 nǚrén
tall	高 gāo
short	矮 ǎi
young	青年 qīngnián
middle-aged	中年 zhōngnián
fat	胖 pàng
thin	瘦 shòu
with a beard	有落腮胡子 yǒu luòsāihúzi
with a mustache	有小胡子 yǒu xiǎohúzi
wearing glasses	戴眼镜 dàiǎnjìng

**Read it** The Chinese for *police* is written with two characters: 警察 (*jǐngchá*). Changing the last of these characters to 官 (*guān*) will produce *police officer*: 警官 (*jǐngguān*); and adding the character 局 (*jú*) will produce the word for *police station*: 警察局 (*jǐngchájú*).

## 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Practice these phrases. Then use the cover flap to hide the text on the right and follow the instructions to make your reply in Chinese.



他长得什么样? 那男人很矮。  
tā zhǎngde shénme yàng nà nánrén hěn ǎi  
Can you describe him?

Say: The man was short.



头发呢? 棕色头发，有落腮胡子。  
tóufa ne zōngsè tóufa, yǒu  
And the hair? luòsāihúzi

Say: Brown hair with  
a beard.

## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

FÙXÍ YŮ LIÀNXÍ  
Review and repeat

## 1 To come

- ① 我乘公共汽车来。  
*wǒ chéng gōnggòng qìchē lái*
- ② 昨天电工来过。  
*zuótiān diàngōng lái guò*
- ③ 请来参加我的生日晚会。  
*qǐng lái cānjiā wǒ de shēngrì wǎnhuì*
- ④ 星期四清洁工没来过。  
*xīngqī sì qīngjié gōng méi lái guò*

## 1 To come (3 minutes)

Put the following sentences into Chinese using the correct form of *lái* (to come).

- ① I'm coming by bus.
- ② The electrician came yesterday.
- ③ Please come to join my birthday party.
- ④ The cleaner didn't come on Thursday.



## 2 Bank and mail

- ① 信用卡  
*xìnyòngkǎ*
- ② 纸币  
*zhǐbì*
- ③ 明信片  
*míngxìnpiàn*
- ④ 信封  
*xìnfēng*
- ⑤ 邮票  
*yóupiào*

## 2 Bank and mail (4 minutes)

Name the numbered items in Chinese.



## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

## 3 Appearance (4 minutes)

What do these descriptions mean?

- ① tā shì àigèzi, yěshì shòuzi
- ② nà nánrén yǒu duǎntóufa
- ③ nà nǚrén dài yǎnjìng
- ④ nà nánrén yǒu xiǎohúzi
- ⑤ tā tóufa huābái, yǒu luòsāihúzi



## 3 Appearance

- ① He/She was short and thin.
- ② The man had short hair.
- ③ The woman wears glasses.
- ④ The man had a mustache.
- ⑤ He had gray hair with a beard.

## 4 The pharmacy (4 minutes)

You are asking a pharmacist for advice. Join in the conversation, replying in Chinese where you see the English prompts.

nǐhǎo, nǎlǐ bù shūfu

- ① I have a stomachache.
- nǐ lǎdùzi ma
- ② No, but I have a headache.
- chī zhè zhǒng yào
- ③ Do you have that as a syrup?
- yǒu
- ④ How much is that?
- wǔshí yuán
- ⑤ Thank you.



## 4 The pharmacy

- ① 我胃疼。  
wǒ wèi téng
- ② 不。我头疼。  
bù. wǒ tóu téng
- ③ 这种药有糖浆型吗?  
zhè zhǒng yào yǒu tángjiāng xíng ma
- ④ 多少钱?  
duō shǎo qián
- ⑤ 谢谢。  
xièxie

# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What is the Chinese for "museum" and "movie"? (pp.48-49)

Say "I like the pond." (pp.102-03)

Ask "What's your profession?" (pp.78-79)

# XIŪXIÁN YÚLÈ

## Leisure time

Popular leisure activities outside the house include shopping and going to karaoke bars, and going to the movies. **pūkè** (cards), **mǎjiàng** (mahjong), **xiàngqí** (Chinese chess), and other traditional games are popular with older people, while theater and opera are only minority pursuits.

# 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the Chinese on the left.

剧场 theater  
*jùchǎng*

看电影 watching movies  
*kàndiànyǐng*

主题公园 theme park  
*zhǔtí gōngyuán*

音乐 music  
*yīnyuè*

艺术 art  
*yìshù*

体育 sports  
*tīyù*

旅游 traveling  
*lǚyóu*

读书 reading  
*dúshū*

我喜欢看京剧。  
*wǒ xǐhuān kàn jīngjù*  
I like Chinese opera.

演员  
*yǎnyuán*  
actor



# 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



你想去卡拉OK厅吗?  
*nǐ xiǎng qù kǎlā OK tīng ma*

Do you want to go to a karaoke bar?



我并不喜欢卡拉OK。  
*wǒ bìng bù xǐhuān kǎlā OK*

I don't really like karaoke.



你业余时间做什么?  
*nǐ yèyúshíjiān zuò shénme*

What do you do in your free time?



## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



我喜欢玩电子游戏。  
wǒ xǐhuān wán diànzǐ yóuxì  
I like video games.

What do you do in your free time? (formal) 您业余时间做什么?  
nín yèyúshíjiān zuò shénme

What do you do in your free time? (informal) 你业余时间做什么?  
nǐ yèyúshíjiān zuò shénme

My hobby is reading. 我的爱好是读书。  
wǒ de àihào shì dúshū

I like watching movies. 我喜欢看电影。  
wǒ xǐhuān kàndiànyǐng

I hate shopping. 我最不喜欢购物了。  
wǒ zuì bù xǐhuān gòuwù le



布景  
bùjǐng  
set

舞台  
wǔtái  
stage

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

I like music.

I don't really like watching movies.

My hobby is opera.

I hate theme parks.



我喜欢购物。  
wǒ xǐhuān gòuwù

I like shopping.



我最不喜欢购物了。  
wǒ zuì bù xǐhuān gòuwù le

I hate shopping.



没问题。我自己去。  
méi wèntí. wǒ zìjǐ qù

No problem, I'll go on my own.



# 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

What's the Chinese for "fish"? (pp.104-05)

Say "I like the theater" and "I like traveling." (pp.118-19)

Say "I don't really like..." (pp.118-19)

# TǐYÙ Yǔ ÀIHÀO

## Sport and hobbies

Traditional Chinese sports, which are still popular, include *martial arts* (**wǔshù**), *Chinese wrestling* (**shuāijiāo**), and dragon-boat racing. Basketball, table tennis, badminton, soccer, and golf have also established themselves. Arts and crafts include embroidery, paper-cutting, and calligraphy.

# 2 Words to remember (5 minutes)

Memorize these words and then test yourself.

足球 soccer  
zúqiú

篮球 basketball  
lánqiú

乒乓 table tennis  
pīngpāng

游泳 swimming  
yóuyǒng

登山 mountain climbing  
dēngshān

钓鱼 fishing  
diàoyú

画画 painting  
huàhuà

书法 calligraphy  
shūfǎ

沙坑  
shākēng  
bunker

高尔夫球手  
gāo'ěrfū  
qiúshǒu  
golfer

我每天打高尔夫。  
wǒ měitiān dǎ  
gāo'ěrfū  
I play golf  
every day.

# 3 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these phrases.

我打棒球。 I play baseball.  
wǒ dǎ bàngqiú

他打乒乓。 He plays table tennis.  
tā dǎ pīngpāng

她喜欢画画。 She likes painting.  
tā xǐhuān huàhuà



## 4 Phrases to remember (4 minutes)

Learn the phrases below and then test yourself. Notice that *play* is **dǎ** or **tī** (literally kick) for sports, but **lǎ** for musical instruments.



我拉小提琴。  
wǒ lā xiǎotiqín  
I play the violin.

—— 旗子  
qízi  
flag

—— 高尔夫球场  
gāo'ěrfū qiúchǎng  
golf course

What do you like doing? (formal) 您想做什么?  
nín xiǎng zuò shénme

What do you like doing? (informal) 你想玩儿什么?  
nǐ xiǎng wán'er shénme

I like playing golf. 我想打高尔夫。  
wǒ xiǎng dǎ gāo'ěrfū

I like playing table tennis. 我想打乒乓。  
wǒ xiǎng dǎ pīngpāng

I play soccer. 我踢足球。  
wǒ tī zúqiú

I like going fishing. 我想去钓鱼。  
wǒ xiǎng qù diàoyú

I go mountain climbing. 我去登山。  
wǒ qù dēngshān

## 5 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases. Then cover up the text on the right and complete the dialogue in Chinese. Check your answers.



你想玩儿什么? 我想踢足球。  
nǐ xiǎng wán'er shénme wǒ xiǎng tī zúqiú  
What do you like doing?

Say: I like playing soccer.



你打篮球吗? 不。我打高尔夫。  
nǐ dǎ lánqiú ma bù. wǒ dǎ gāo'ěrfū  
Do you play basketball?

Say: No, I play golf.



你经常打吗? 每星期打一次。  
nǐ jīngcháng dǎ ma měixīngqī dǎ yīcì  
Do you play often?

Say: Every week.

## 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Say "your husband" and "your wife." (pp.12-13)

How do you say "lunch" and "dinner" in Chinese? (pp.20-21)

Say "Sorry, I'm busy that day." (pp.32-33)

# SHÈJIÀO

## Socializing

As a business guest, it's more common to be invited to a restaurant than to someone's home. This is partly practical—people often have long commutes. But if you're staying for longer, you may be invited for a meal or a party.

东道主  
dōngdàozhǔ  
host

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

您想来参加晚宴吗?  
nín xiǎng lái cānjiā  
wǎnyàn ma

Would you like to come for dinner?

星期三怎么样?  
xīngqīsān zěnmeyàng

What about Wednesday?

下一次吧。  
xiàyīcì ba

Perhaps another time.



**Cultural tip** When visiting a Chinese home, remember that it's common to remove your shoes at the door. Take a gift for the host or hostess. Flowers, a bottle of wine, or a present from your home country will be greatly appreciated.

## 3 In conversation (6 minutes)



您想来参加星期二的晚宴吗?  
nín xiǎng lái cānjiā  
xīngqī'èr de wǎnyàn ma

Would you like to come for dinner on Tuesday?



对不起,我星期二很忙。  
duìbuqǐ, wǒ xīngqī'èr  
hěnmáng

Sorry. I'm busy on Tuesday.



星期四怎么样?  
xīngqīsì zěnmeyàng

What about Thursday?

## 4 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

party 晚会  
*wǎnhuì*

invitation 邀请  
*yāoqǐng*

gift 礼物  
*lǐwù*

客人  
*kèrén*  
guest

**Read it** You now know the principle of how the Chinese script works and can recognize some basic recurring characters. You'll also find more information on pp.152-57 to further expand your understanding.

## 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Join in this conversation.

我们星期日有一个 好, 那太好了。  
晚会。你能来吗? *hǎo, nà tài hǎo le*  
*wǒmen xīngqīrì yǒu yīgè*  
*wǎnhuì. nǐ néng lái ma*  
We are having a party  
on Saturday. Are you  
free to come?

Say: Yes, how nice!

那太好了。 我们几点钟来呢?  
*nà tài hǎo le wǒmen jǐdiǎnzhōng lái ne*  
That's great!

Say: At what time  
should we arrive?

谢谢你的邀请。  
*xièxie nǐde yāoqǐng*  
Thank you for  
inviting us.



好, 那太好了。  
*hǎo, nà tài hǎo le*

Yes, how nice!



请带你的先生一起来。  
*qǐng dài nǐde xiānsheng*  
*yīqǐ lái*

Please bring your husband.



我们几点钟来呢?  
*wǒmen jǐdiǎnzhōng lái ne*

At what time should  
we come?

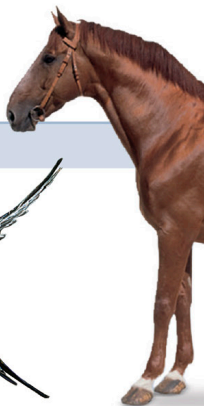


dá àn

Answers Cover with flap

# FÙXÍ YŮ LIÀNXÍ

## Review and repeat



### 1 Animals

- ① 猫  
māo
- ② 鸟  
niǎo
- ③ 马  
mǎ
- ④ 鱼  
yú
- ⑤ 狗  
gǒu

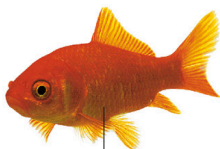
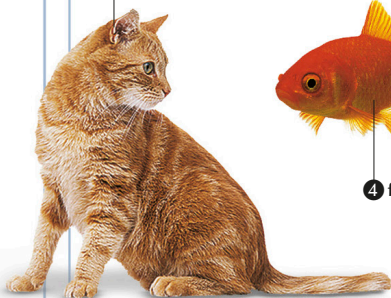
### 1 Animals (3 minutes)

Name the numbered animals in Chinese.

① cat

bird ②

④ fish



### 2 I like...

- ① 我想打棒球。  
wǒ xiǎng dǎ bàngqiú
- ② 我想打高尔夫。  
wǒ xiǎng dǎ gāo'ěrfū
- ③ 我想画画。  
wǒ xiǎng huàhuà

### 2 I like... (4 minutes)

Say the following in Chinese:

- ① I like playing baseball.
- ② I like playing golf.
- ③ I like painting.

①



②



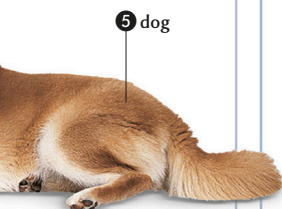
③





## dá àn

Answers Cover with flap



## 3 Leisure (4 minutes)

What do these Chinese sentences mean?

- ① *wǒ zuì bù xǐhuān kǎlā-ok*
- ② *wǒ xǐhuān wán diànzǐ yóuxì*
- ③ *wǒ de àihào shì dúshū*
- ④ *wǒ bìng bù xǐhuān gòuwù*
- ⑤ *wǒ lǎ xiǎotíqín*

## 3 Leisure

- ① I hate karaoke.
- ② I like video games.
- ③ My hobby is reading.
- ④ I don't really like shopping.
- ⑤ I play the violin.

## 4 An invitation (4 minutes)

You are invited for dinner. Join in the conversation, replying in Chinese following the English prompts.

*nín xiǎng lái cānjiā xīngqīliù de wǎnhuì ma*

- ① Sorry, I'm busy on Saturday.

*xīngqīsì zěnmeyàng*

- ② Yes, how nice!

*qǐng dài nǐde xiānshēng yīqīlái*

- ③ At what time should we arrive?

*wǎnshàng bādiǎn*

- ④ Thank you very much.

## 4 An invitation

- ① 对不起, 我星期六很忙。  
*duìbuqǐ, wǒ xīngqīliù hěnmáng*

- ② 好, 那太好了。  
*hǎo, nà tài hǎo le*

- ③ 我们几点钟来呢?  
*wǒmen jǐdiǎnzhōng lái ne*

- ④ 谢谢你。  
*xièxie nǐ*



## Reinforce and progress

Regular practice is the key to maintaining and advancing your language skills. In this section, you will find a variety of suggestions for reinforcing and extending your knowledge of Chinese. Many involve returning to exercises in the book and using the dictionary to extend their scope. Go back through the lessons in a different order, mix and match activities to make up your own 15-minute daily program, or focus on topics that are of particular relevance to your current needs.

### 1 Warm-up (1 minute)

Ask "How much is that?"  
(pp.18-19)

What are "breakfast,"  
"lunch," and "dinner?"  
(pp.20-21)

What are "three," "four,"  
"five," and "six?" (pp.10-11)

### Keep warmed up

Revisit the Warm-up boxes to remind yourself of keywords and phrases. Make sure you work your way through all of them on a regular basis.

### 2 I'd like... (3 minutes)

Say "I'd like" the following in Chinese:



### Review and repeat again

Work through a Review and Repeat lesson as a way of reinforcing words and phrases presented in the course. Return to the main lesson for any topic on which you are no longer confident.

### 3 In conversation: taxi (2 minutes)

#### Carry on conversing

Reread the In Conversation panels.

Say both parts of the conversation, paying attention to the pronunciation. Where possible, try incorporating new words from the dictionary.



请带我去故宫, 好吗。  
*qǐng dàiwǒ qù gùgōng,  
hǎo ma*

I'd like to go to the  
Forbidden City, please.



上车吧。  
*shàngchē ba*

Get in.



我就在这儿下车, 可以吗?  
*wǒ jiù zài zhèr xià chē,  
kěyǐ ma*

Can you drop me  
here, please?

### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



What time do  
you open? 你们什么时候开门?  
*nǐmen shénme shíjiān  
kāimén*

What time do  
you close? 你们什么时候关门?  
*nǐmen shénme shíjiān  
guānmén*

Is wheelchair  
access possible? 轮椅可以方便进出吗?  
*lúnǐ yǐ kěyǐ fāngbiàn  
jìnchū ma*

### Practice phrases

Return to the Useful Phrases and Put into Practice exercises. Test yourself using the cover flap. When you are confident, devise your own versions of the phrases, using new words from the dictionary.

### Match, repeat, and extend

Remind yourself of words related to specific topics by returning to the Match and Repeat and Words to Remember exercises. Test yourself using the cover flap. Discover new words in that area by referring to the dictionary and menu guide.

#### 5 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the Chinese words on the right.

- 1 灯  
dēng
- 2 订书机  
dìngshūjī
- 3 电话  
diànhuà
- 4 屏幕  
píngmù
- 5 键盘  
jiànpan
- 6 笔记本电脑  
bǐjìběn diànnǎo
- 7 办公桌  
bàngōngzhuō
- 8 闹钟  
nàozhōng
- 9 打印机  
dǎyìnjī
- 10 笔  
bǐ
- 11 书写纸  
shūxiězhǐ
- 12 抽屉  
chōuti
- 13 座椅  
zuoyǐ

1 lamp

screen 4

keyboard 5

laptop 6

2 stapler

telephone 3

7 desk

8 clock

printer 9

pen 10

notepad 11

drawer 12

#### Say it again

The Say It exercises are a useful instant reminder for each lesson. Practice these, using your own vocabulary variations from the dictionary or elsewhere in the lesson.

#### 6 Say it (2 minutes)

What kind of flower is this?  
I like the pagoda.  
Is there a pond?

### Using other resources

In addition to working with this book, try the following language extension ideas:

**Visit China, if you can,** and try out your new skills with native speakers. Otherwise, find out if there is a Mandarin-speaking community near you. There may be shops, cafés, restaurants, and clubs. Try to visit some of these and use your Chinese to order food and drinks and strike up conversations. Most native speakers will be happy to speak Chinese to you.

**Join a language class or club.** There are usually evening and day classes available at a variety of different levels. Or you could start a club yourself if you have friends who are also interested in working on their Chinese.

**Practice your new knowledge** of the Chinese characters (see pp.152-57). Look at the back of food packages and other products. You will often find a Chinese list of ingredients or components. See if you can spot some familiar characters in the Chinese list and then compare to the English equivalent.

**Look at the titles and advertisements** of Chinese magazines and comics. The pictures will help you to decipher the script. Look for familiar words and characters, even if you can't make out the whole text.

**Use the internet** to find websites for learning languages, some of which offer free online help.



## MENU GUIDE

This guide lists the most common terms you may encounter on Chinese menus. Dishes are divided into categories and the Chinese script is displayed clearly to help you identify items on a menu.

### Rice and noodle dishes

<i>miàntiáo</i>	面条	noodles
<i>mǐfàn</i>	米饭	rice
<i>nuòmǐ</i>	糯米	sticky rice
<i>chǎofàn</i>	炒饭	fried rice
<i>dànchǎofàn</i>	蛋炒饭	fried rice with egg
<i>chǎomiàn</i>	炒面	fried noodles
<i>chǎomǐfěn</i>	炒米粉	fried rice noodles
<i>zhōu</i>	粥	rice porridge

### Basic food items

<i>chūnjuǎn</i>	春卷	spring rolls
<i>dòushābāo</i>	豆沙包	steamed dumplings with sweet bean paste filling
<i>huājuǎn</i>	花卷	steamed rolls
<i>mántou</i>	馒头	steamed bread

<i>miànbāo</i>	面包	bread (white)
<i>nǎilào</i>	奶酪	cheese
<i>ròu</i>	肉	meat (usually pork)
<i>xiáncài</i>	咸菜	pickles

## Cooking methods and combinations

---

<i>chǎo...</i>	炒...	stir-fried...
<i>chāshāo...</i>	叉烧...	barbecued...
<i>...dīng</i>	...丁	diced...
<i>dōnggū ...</i>	冬菇...	...with dried mushrooms
<i>gālǐ...</i>	咖喱...	curried...
<i>gōngbǎo...</i>	宫保...	stir-fried... with peanuts and chili
<i>háoyóu...</i>	耗油...	...with oyster sauce
<i>hóngshāo...</i>	红烧...	...braised in brown sauce
<i>huáliū...</i>	滑溜...	stir-fried... with sauce added
<i>huì...</i>	烩...	stewed...
<i>huǒguō...</i>	火锅...	...in hotpot
<i>huǒtuǐ...</i>	火腿...	...with ham
<i>jiācháng...</i>	家常...	home-style...
<i>kǎo...</i>	烤...	roasted...



...kuài	...块	...chunks, pieces
làzi...	辣子...	...with chili
májiàng...	麻酱...	...quick-fried in sesame paste
málà...	麻辣...	...with chili and wild pepper
...piàn	...片	sliced...
fānqiézhī...	番茄汁...	...with tomato sauce
qīngzhēng...	清蒸...	steamed...
sānxiān...	三鲜...	“three-fresh” ... (with three varied ingredients)
...sī	...丝	shredded...
tángcù ...wán (or yuán)	糖醋...丸 (元)	sweet and sour... balls
xiāngsū...	香酥...	crispy deep-fried...
zhá...	炸...	deep-fried...
zhàcài...	榨菜...	...with pickled mustard greens
zhēng...	蒸...	steamed...

## Pork

---

zhūròu	猪肉	pork
chāshāoròu	叉烧肉	barbecued pork
fěnzēngròu	粉蒸肉	steamed pork with rice

<i>làzi ròudīng</i>	辣子肉丁	stir-fried diced pork with chili
<i>mùxū ròu</i>	木须肉	stir-fried sliced pork with eggs, tree-ear (edible fungus), and day lily (type of dried lily)
<i>qīngjiāo chǎo ròupiàn</i>	青椒炒肉片	stir-fried sliced pork with pepper
<i>sǔn chǎo ròupiàn</i>	笋炒肉片	stir-fried sliced pork with bamboo shoots
<i>tángcù páigǔ</i>	糖醋排骨	spare ribs cooked in a sweet and sour sauce
<i>zhàcài ròusī</i>	榨菜肉丝	stir-fried shredded pork with pickled mustard greens

## Chicken and duck

<i>jī</i>	鸡	chicken
<i>jīdīng</i>	鸡丁	diced chicken
<i>jiàngbào jīdīng</i>	酱爆鸡丁	diced chicken quick-fried with bean sauce
<i>báizhǎnjī</i>	白斩鸡	sliced cold chicken
<i>jiàohuājī</i>	叫花鸡	“beggar’s chicken” (charcoal-baked marinated chicken)
<i>yā</i>	鸭	duck
<i>běijīng kǎoyā</i>	北京烤鸭	Peking roast duck
<i>xiānggū yāzhǎng</i>	香菇鸭掌	duck’s foot with mushroom

## Beef and lamb

<i>niúròu</i>	牛肉	beef
<i>cōngbào niúròu</i>	葱爆牛肉	beef quick-fried with Chinese onions
<i>gōngbǎo niúròu</i>	宫保牛肉	stir-fried beef with peanuts and chili
<i>yúxiāng niúròu</i>	鱼香牛肉	stir-fried beef in hot spicy sauce
<i>hóngshāo niúròu</i>	红烧牛肉	beef braised in brown sauce
<i>yáng ròu</i>	羊肉	lamb
<i>kǎo yáng ròuchuàn</i>	烤羊肉串	lamb kebabs
<i>shuàn yáng ròu</i>	涮羊肉	Mongolian hotpot

## Fish and seafood

<i>yú</i>	鱼	fish
<i>yúpiàn</i>	鱼片	fish slices
<i>tángcù yúkuài</i>	糖醋鱼块	sweet and sour fish
<i>huáliū yúpiàn</i>	滑溜鱼片	stir-fried fish slices with thick sauce added
<i>xiā</i>	虾	shrimp
<i>fúróng xiārén</i>	芙蓉虾仁	stir-fried shrimp with egg white
<i>yóuyú</i>	鱿鱼	squid
<i>lǐyú</i>	鲤鱼	carp

<i>qīngzhēng lǐyú</i>	清蒸鲤鱼	steamed carp
<i>hóngshāo lǐyú</i>	红烧鲤鱼	carp braised in brown sauce
<i>sānsī yúchì</i>	三丝鱼翅	shark's fin with shredded sea cucumber, abalone, and bamboo shoots
<i>gānshāo huángshàn</i>	干烧黄鳝	eel braised with chili and bean sauce

## Vegetables

<i>báicài</i>	白菜	cabbage
<i>bōcài</i>	菠菜	spinach
<i>càihuā</i>	菜花	cauliflower
<i>dòuyá</i>	豆芽	bean sprouts
<i>chǎo dòuyá</i>	炒豆芽	stir-fried bean sprouts
<i>mógū</i>	蘑菇	mushroom
<i>yùmǐ</i>	玉米	corn
<i>qíezi</i>	茄子	eggplant
<i>tǔdòu</i>	土豆	potato
<i>tǔdòutiáo</i>	土豆条	chips
<i>xīhóngshì</i>	西红柿	tomato
<i>xīhóngshì chǎo jīdàn</i>	西红柿炒鸡蛋	stir-fried tomato with egg
<i>chǎo shícài</i>	炒时菜	stir-fried seasonal vegetables

<i>dōngsǔn biǎndòu</i>	冬笋扁豆	stir-fried green beans with bamboo shoots
<i>sù shíjīn</i>	素什锦	stir-fried assorted vegetables
<i>xiānmó wāndòu</i>	鲜蘑豌豆	stir-fried peas with mushrooms

## Specialities

---

<i>bāozi</i>	包子	steamed dumplings with minced pork or various fillings
<i>chāshāobāo</i>	叉烧包	steamed dumplings with barbecued pork filling
<i>xiǎolóngbāo</i>	小笼包	steamed dumplings with various fillings
<i>dòufu</i>	豆腐	bean curd
<i>dòufu gān</i>	豆腐干	dried bean curd
<i>dòufu pí</i>	豆腐皮	dried soy bean cream
<i>guōbā dòufu</i>	锅巴豆腐	bean curd fried in batter
<i>xiārén dòufu</i>	虾仁豆腐	bean curd with shrimp
<i>sānxiān dòufu</i>	三鲜豆腐	“three-fresh” bean curd (with three varied ingredients)
<i>mápo dòufu</i>	麻婆豆腐	“pock-marked woman bean curd” (bean curd with minced beef in hot spicy sauce)
<i>fǔzhú</i>	腐竹	“bean curd bamboo” (dried soy bean cream, in the shape of bamboo)



<i>shuǐjiǎo</i>	水饺	Chinese ravioli
<i>zhēngjiǎo</i>	蒸饺	steamed Chinese ravioli
<i>guōtiē</i>	锅贴	fried Chinese ravioli
<i>húntún</i> (or <i>yúntūn</i> or <i>chāoshǒu</i> )	馄饨	small Chinese ravioli in soup
<i>sōnghuādàn</i>	松花蛋	preserved eggs
<i>xiànbǐng</i>	馅饼	savory fritter
<i>yóutiáo</i>	油条	unsweetened doughnut sticks

## Soups

---

<i>zǐcài tāng</i>	紫菜汤	seaweed and dried shrimp soup
<i>sānxiān tāng</i>	三鲜汤	“three-fresh” soup (normally shrimp, meats, and a seasonal vegetable)
<i>shícài ròupiàn tāng</i>	时菜肉片汤	soup with sliced pork and seasonal vegetables
<i>shíjīn dōngguā tāng</i>	什锦冬瓜汤	winter marrow soup
<i>bōcài fěnsī tāng</i>	菠菜粉丝汤	soup with spinach and vermicelli
<i>xīhóngshì jīdàntāng</i>	西红柿鸡蛋汤	soup with eggs and tomato
<i>zhàcài ròusī tāng</i>	榨菜肉丝汤	soup with shredded pork and pickled mustard greens

## Fruit

<i>bōluó</i>	菠萝	pineapple
<i>guǎnggān</i>	广柑	Guangdong sweet orange
<i>hāmìguā</i>	哈密瓜	honeydew melon
<i>júzi (or mìjú )</i>	橘子 (蜜橘)	tangerine
<i>lí</i>	梨	pear
<i>lìzhī</i>	荔枝	lychee
<i>píngguǒ</i>	苹果	apple
<i>pútáo</i>	葡萄	grape
<i>xiāngjiāo</i>	香蕉	banana
<i>xīguā</i>	西瓜	watermelon

## Desserts

<i>básī xiāngjiāo</i>	拔丝香蕉	banana fritters
<i>bīngqílín</i>	冰淇淋	ice cream
<i>shuǐguǒ sèlā</i>	水果色拉	fruit salad
<i>shíjīn shuǐguǒ gēng</i>	什锦水果羹	fruit salad soup
<i>bābǎo fàn</i>	八宝饭	“eight-treasure” rice dessert (with eight types of fruit and nuts)
<i>bīngtáng yín'ěr</i>	冰糖银耳	silver tree-ear (edible fungus) in syrup

## Drinks

---

<i>shuǐ</i>	水	water
<i>guǒzhī</i>	果汁	fruit juice
<i>chá</i>	茶	tea
<i>kāfēi</i>	咖啡	coffee
<i>niúǎi</i>	牛奶	milk
<i>dòujiāng</i>	豆浆	soy milk
<i>qìshuǐ</i>	汽水	carbonated water
<i>báijiǔ</i>	白酒	baijiu (a clear spirit)
<i>píjiǔ</i>	啤酒	beer
<i>pútáojiǔ</i>	葡萄酒	wine

# DICTIONARY

## English to Chinese

This dictionary contains the vocabulary from **15 Minute Chinese**, together with many other high-frequency words. You can also find additional terms for food and drink in the Menu Guide (pp.128-37).

In Chinese, the plural of nouns is normally the same as the singular. Chinese descriptive words, or adjectives, may have different endings depending on how they are used and are also often preceded by **hěn** (*very*). Verbs have no tenses and don't generally change according to who or what is the subject; but there are some characters that can be added to indicate a particular time or mood—see p.112.

### A

a (one) *yīgè*

accident *shìgù*

accountant *kuàijìshī*

ache *téng*

actor *yǎnyuán*

adapter (plug)

*zhuǎnjiē chātóu*

address *dìzhǐ*

adhesive bandages

*chuàngkētiē*

admission: admission

charge *ménpiàofèi*

admission ticket *ménpiào*

after *yǐhòu*

afternoon *xiàwǔ*

again *zài*

agenda *huìyì rìchéng*

air conditioning *kōngtiáo*

air mail *hángkōng yóujiàn*

airport *jīchǎng, fēijīchǎng*

alarm clock *nàozhōng*

alcohol *jiǔjīng*

all *suǒyǒu*

all the streets

*suǒyǒu de jiēdào*

that's all, thanks

*hǎole, xièxie*

allergic *guòmǐn*

almost *chàbùduō*

alone *dāndú*

already *yǐ jīng*

also *yě*

always *zǒngshì*

am: I am *wǒ shì*

America *měiguó*

American (person)

*měiguó rén*

and *hé*

animal *dòngwù*

another (different) *líng yí gè*

(further) *yòu yí gè*

anniversary *zhōunián*

answering machine *liúyánjī*

antibiotics *kàngshēngsù*

antique store *gǔdòngdiàn*

antiseptic *fángfǔjì*

anything: anything else?

*háiyào qítā shípǐn ma?*

apartment *gōngyù, dānyuán*

apple *píngguǒ*

appointment book *yuēhuì*

*shū*

April *sìyuè*

architecture (study)

*jiànzhùxué*

are: you are *nǐ shì*

we are *wǒmen shì*

they are *tāmen shì*

arm *shǒubì, gēbo*

arrival *dàodá*

arrive *dàodá*

art *yìshù*

ashtray *yānhuīgāng*

asleep: he's asleep

*tā shuìzháo le*

ask *wèn*

associate professor (college)

*dàxué jiǎngshī*

asthma *xiàochuǎnbìng*

at *zài*

at the café *zài kāfēi guǎn*

attic *gélóu*

ATM *zìdòng tíkuǎnjī*

attractive *mírén de*

August *bāyuè*

aunt (maternal) *yí mā*

(paternal) *gū mā*

Australia *àodàlìyà*

Australian (adj.) *àodàlìyà de*

awful *zāotòule*

### B

baby *yīng'ér*

baby wipes *yīng'ér cǎixījīn*

back (body) *bèi*

back street *hòujiē*

backpack *bēibāo*

bad *huài*

bag (for purchases, etc.)

*sùliàodài*

baggage *xíngli*

bakery *miànbāolèi, miànbāodiàn*

balcony *yángtái*

ball *qiú*

bamboo *zhúzi*

bamboo shoots *zhúsūn*

banana *xiāngjiāo*

band (music) *yuèduì*

bandage *bēngdài*

bank yínháng	black hēi	bruise shānghén
bar jiǔbā	blanket máotǎn, tǎnzi	brush shuāzi
barber shop lǐfàdiàn	blind máng	Buddha fó
baseball bàngqiú	blinds bǎiyè chuāng	budget yùsuàn
basketball lánqiú	blocked (road, drain) dǔzhùle	building jiànzhù
bathrobe chényī	blond (adj.) jīnhuángsè	bulb (light) dēngpào
bathroom wèishēngjiān, xǐzǎojiān	blood test yànxuè	bumper bǎoxiǎngàng
bathub yùgāng, xǐzǎo	blouse nǚchènshān	bungalow píngfáng
battery diànrí	blue lán	burglar páshǒu, qièzèi
beach hǎitān	boarding pass dēngjīpái	Burma miǎndiàn
beans dòu	boat chuán	burn (noun) shāoshāng
beard luòsāihúzi	body shēntǐ	bus gōnggòng qìchē
beautiful měilì, hǎokàn	boiled zhǔ	business shēngyì
beauty products	boiled rice mǐfàn	business card míngpiàn
huàzhuāngpǐn	book (noun) shū	business person shāng rén
because yīnwéi	book (verb) dīng	bus station gōnggòng qìchē zǒngzhàn
bed chuáng	bookstore shūdiàn, túshūlèi	bus stop chēzhàn
bed runner chuángqí	border (of country) biānjiè	busy (street) rènao
bedroom wòshì	boring wúliáo	(person) hěnmáng
bedside table chuángtóuguī	boss lǎobǎn	(phone line) zhànxiàn
bedspread chuángdān	both liǎnggè dōu	but dànshì
beef niúròu	bottle píngzi	butcher shop ròulèi, ròudiàn
beer píjiǔ	bottle opener qǐpíngqì	butter huángyóu
before (zài) ... yǐqián	bowl wǎn	button niǔkǒu
begin kāishǐ	box hézi	buy mǎi
behind (zài) ... hòumiàn	boxer quánjīshǒu	by zuò
bell zhōng	boy nánhái	by train/car
(for door, school) líng	boyfriend nán péngyou	zuò huǒchē/zuò qìchē
below (zài) ... xiàmiàn	bra xiōngzhào	
belt (clothing) yāodài	bracelet shǒuzhuó	
best: the best zuìhǎo	branch (of company) fēnzhī jīgòu	
better gènghǎo	brandy báilándì	
between (zài) ... zhījiān	bread miànbāo	
bicycle zìxíngchē	breakfast zǎocān	
big dà	bridge (over river etc.) qiáo	
bikini bǐjīn	briefcase gōngwénbāo	
bill zhàngdān	bring dài	
bill (banknote) zhǐbì	Britain yīngguódè	
bird niǎo	British (adj.) yīngguó	
birthday shēngrì	broken (out of order) huàile (leg) duànle	
happy birthday!	brooch xiōngzhēn	
shēngrì kuàilè!	brother (older) gēge	
biscuit bǐnggān	(younger) dìdi	
bite yǎo	brown zōngsè	
bitter (taste) kǔ		

## C

cabinet (kitchen) guǐchú
cable TV yǒuxiàn diànshì
café kāfēi tīng, cháguǎn
cake dàngāo
calculator jìsuànrì
call: what is this called? zhè jiào shénme ?
calligraphy shūfǎ
camera zhàoxiàngjī
can: can I ...? wǒ kěyǐ ... ma?
can you ...? nǐ néng bù néng ...?
he can't ... tā bù néng ...
can (tin) guàntou



- can opener *guàntou qǐzi*  
 Canada *jiānádà*  
 candle *làzhú*  
 canopy *yǔlián*  
 Cantonese (adj.) *guǎngdōng*  
 (language) *guǎngdōnghuà*  
 cap *màozǐ*  
 car *qìchē, chē*  
 parking lot  
*tíngchēchǎng*  
 car (train) *chēxiāng*  
 sleeper car  
*wòpù chēxiāng*  
 ordinary car  
*pǔtōng chēxiāng*  
 car seat (for a baby)  
*yīng'ér qìchē ānquán zuòyǐ*  
 card (business) *míngpiàn*  
 cards (playing) *pūkè*  
 careful: be careful!  
*xiǎoxīn!*  
 carpenter *mùjiàng*  
 carpet *dītǎn*  
 cart *shǒutuìchē*  
 cash (money) *xiànjīn*  
 cassette *cídài*  
 cat *māo*  
 CD drive *guāngqū*  
 ceiling *tiānhuābǎn*  
 cell phone *shǒujī*  
 center (of town) *zhōngxīn*  
 chair *yǐzi*  
 swivel chair *zuòyǐ*  
 change (verb: money)  
*huànqián, duìhuàn*  
 (noun: money) *língqián*  
 (verb: clothes, trains) *huàn*  
 charger *chōngdiànnqì*  
 check *zhìpiào*  
 check card *zhìpiàokǎ*  
 check-in *bànlǐ dēngjī shǒuxù*  
 checkbook *zhìpiàoběn*  
 cheese *nǎilào*  
 chef *chúshī*  
 chess *xiàngqí*  
 chest (body) *xiōng*  
 chewing gum *kǒuxiāngtáng*  
 chicken *jī* (meat) *jīròu*  
 child, children *háizi*  
 children's ward  
*xiǎo'ér bìngfáng*  
 chili powder *làjiāofěn*  
 China *zhōngguó*  
 China tea *zhōngguó chá*  
 Chinese (adj.) *zhōngguó*  
 (person) *zhōngguó rén*  
 (language) *hànyǔ*  
 the Chinese *zhōngguó rénmin*  
 Chinese New Year  
*zhōngguónián, chūnjié*  
 Chinese-style *zhōngshì*  
 chips *zhá tǔdòupiàn*  
 chocolate *qiǎokèlì*  
 chopsticks *kuàizi*  
 church *jiàotáng*  
 cigar *xuējiǎ*  
 cigarette *xiāngyān*  
 city *chéngshì*  
 clean (adj.) *gānjìng*  
 cleaner  
 (person) *qīngjiéyuán*  
 clever *cōngmíng*  
 clock *zhōng*  
 close (verb) *guān*  
 close: to be close (near) *jìn*  
 closed *guānle, xiūxi*  
 clothes *yīfu*  
 clothespin *yīfu jiàzi*  
 coast *hǎibīn*  
 coat (overcoat) *dàyī*  
 (jacket) *wàiyī*  
 coat hanger *yījià*  
 cockroach *zhāngláng*  
 coconut *yēzi*  
 coconut milk *yēzi zhī*  
 coffee *kāfēi*  
 coins *yìngbì*  
 cold (illness) *gǎnmào*  
 (temperature) *lěng*  
 collect/reverse charge  
 call *duìfāng fùkuǎn*  
 college *dàxué*  
 college associate professor  
*dàxué jiǎngshī*  
 color *yánsè*  
 comb *shūzi*  
 come *lái*  
 come in! *qǐng jìn*  
 please come! *qǐnglá*  
 Communist Party  
*gòngchǎndǎng*  
 Communist Party member  
*gòngchǎndǎngyuán*  
 company (firm) *gōngsī*  
 complicated *fùzá*  
 computer *diànnǎo, jìsuànjī*  
 computer repair shop  
*diànnǎo xiūliǎdiàn*  
 concert *yīnyuèhuì*  
 condom *bìyùntào*  
 conference *yántǎohuì*  
 consulate *língshìguǎn*  
 contact lenses *yǐnxíng yǎnjìng*  
 contract (noun) *hétóng*  
 cool (day, weather) *liángkuai*  
 cook (chef) *chúshī*  
 corner (street) *jiējiǎo*  
 corridor *zōuláng*  
 cost *jiàqián*  
 what does it cost?  
*zhè yào duōshǎo qián?*  
 cot *diàochuáng/yīng'érchuáng*  
 cotton *miánhuā*  
 cotton wool *yàomián*  
 cough *késou*  
 countertop *chútái*  
 country (nation) *guójiā*  
 cow *niú*  
 crab *pángxiè*  
 cramp *jìngluán*  
 cream (to eat) *nǎiyóu*  
 credit card *xìnyòngkǎ*  
 crime *fànzuì*  
 crocodile *è yú*  
 crosswalk (street) *bānmǎxiàn*  
 crowd *rénqún*  
 crowded *yōngjǐ*

Cultural Revolution  
wénhuà dàgémìng  
cup bēizi  
a cup of coffee yī bēi kāfēi  
curry gālǐ  
curtains chuānglián  
customs hǎiguān  
cut qiē  
cyclist qí zìxíngchē de rén

## D

dairy (products) rǔzhīpǐn  
dangerous wēixiǎn  
dark hēi'ān  
daughter nǚ'ér  
day tiān  
dead sǐle  
deaf ěrlóng  
December shí'èr yuè  
deep shēn  
delayed wǎndiǎn  
delicatessen shúshílèi  
delicious hǎochī  
delivery jiāofù  
dentist yáyī, yákē yīshēng  
deodorant chúchòujì  
department (of company) bù  
department store bǎihuò  
shāngdiàn, bǎihuò dàlóu  
departure(s) chūfā  
designer shèjìshī  
desk bàngōngzhuō  
desserts tiándiǎn  
develop (film) chōngxǐ  
diabetes tángniàobìng  
diapers niàojīn  
diarrhea lǎdúzi  
dictionary zìdiǎn  
die sǐ  
different bùtóng  
difficult kùnnán  
dining room cāntīng  
dinner wǎncān  
dinner party wǎnyàn  
dirty zāng

disabled cánjī  
disco dísikē  
dishwasher xǐwǎnjī  
dishwashing liquid  
xǐjiéjīng  
disposable diapers  
yīcìxìng niàojīn  
divorced líhūnle  
do zuò  
doctor yīshēng  
document wénjiàn  
dog gǒu  
dollar měiyuán  
don't! búyào!  
door mén (vehicle) chēmén  
double room shuāngrén fáng  
drawer chōuti  
down: down there xiàmiàn  
dress (woman's) liányīqún  
drink (verb) hē  
drinking water yǐnyòngshuǐ  
drinks (category) yǐnliào  
driver's license jiàzhào  
drops (medicinal) yàoshuǐ  
drunk hēzuìle  
dry gān  
dry cleaner's gānxǐdiàn  
dynasty cháodài  
the Ming/Ch'ing Dynasty  
míngcháo/qīngcháo

## E

each měi yīgè  
ear ěrduo  
earbuds ěrjī  
early zǎo  
earring ěrhuan  
east dōng  
easy róngyì  
eat chī  
egg jīdàn  
egg noodles jīdàn miàn  
eight bā, bāgè  
either ... or ...  
búshì ... jiùshì ...

elastic yǒu tánxìng de  
elbow zhǒu  
electrician diàngōng  
electricity diàn, gōngdiàn  
electronics store  
diànnqì shāngdiàn  
elevator (lift) diàntī  
else: something else  
biéde dōngxi  
anything else?  
hǎiyào qítā shípín ma?  
somewhere else  
biéde dìfāng  
email diànzǐ yóujiàn  
email address diànzǐ yóuzhǐ  
embarrassing gāngà  
embassy dàshǐguān  
emergency jǐnjǐ qíngkuàng  
emergency room jízhěnsì  
emperor huángdì  
empty kōng  
end (noun) mòduān  
engaged (to be married)  
dīnghūnle  
engine fādòngjī  
engineer gōngchéngshī  
engineering (study) gōngkē  
England yīngguó  
English (person) yīngguó rén  
(language) yīngyǔ  
enough gòule  
entrance rùkǒu, rùchǎng  
entrées zhǔshí  
envelope xìnfēng  
epilepsy diānxiánzhèng  
eraser xiàngpí  
estimate gūsuàn  
evening wǎnshàng  
every měiyīgè  
every day měitiān  
every week měixīngqī  
everyone měiyīgè rén  
everything měijiàn shìqíng  
everywhere měigè dìfāng  
excellent hǎojíle  
exchange (goods) gēnghuàn

exchange rate *huìlǜ*  
 excuse me (to get attention)  
*qǐngwèn, láojià*  
 (pardon?) *qǐng zài shuō*  
*yībiàn, hǎo ma?*  
 exhibition *zhǎnshìhuì*  
 exit *chūkǒu*  
 expensive *guì*  
 eye *yǎn, yǎnjīng*  
 eyebrow *méi*  
 eyewitness *mùjìzhě*

## F

face *liǎn*  
 factory *gōngchǎng*  
 fall (season) *qiū*  
 family *jiātíng*  
 fan (mechanical) *fēngshàn*  
 (hand-held) *shànzi*  
 far (away) *yuǎn*  
 fare *chēpiào*  
 farmer *nóngmín*  
 fashion *shíshàng*  
 fast *kuài*  
 fat (person) *pàng*  
 father *fùqīn*  
     my father *bàba*  
 faucet *shuǐlóngtóu*  
 February *èryuè*  
 feel *gǎnjué*  
     I feel hot *wǒ gǎnjué rè*  
 ferry *dùchuán*  
 fever *fāshāo*  
 few: a few *yīxiē*  
 fiancé(e) *wèi hūn fū/qī*  
 field *tiándì* (rice, paddy)  
*dàotián*  
 figures (e.g. sales) *zǒngjì*  
 film (camera) *jiāojiǎn*  
 (movie) *diànyǐng*  
 find *zhǎo*  
 finger *shǒuzhītou*  
 fire *huǒ*  
     there's a fire! *zháohuǒ la!*  
 fire extinguisher *mièhuǒqì*

first *dìyī*  
 fish *yú*  
 fisherman *yúmín*  
 fishmonger *yúlái*  
 fishing *diàoyú*  
 fishing boat *yúchuán*  
 five *wǔ, wǔgè*  
 fizzy *yǒuqìde*  
 flag *qízi*  
 flash (for camera)  
*shǎnguāngdēng*  
 flat (adj.) *píngtǎn*  
 flat tire *chētāi méiqì le*  
 flavor *wèidào*  
 flea *tiàozǎo*  
 flight *hángbān*  
 floor (of room) *dìbǎn*  
 (story) *lóu*  
 florist *huāhuìdiàn*  
 flower *huā, huār*  
 fly (insect) *cāngyíng*  
 fly (verb) *fēi*  
 folk music *mínjiān yīnyuè*  
 fond: I'm fond of *wǒ xǐhuān*  
 food *shíwù*  
 food poisoning *shíwù zhòngdú*  
 foot *jiǎo*  
     foot treatment (spa) *zúliáo*  
 for: for her *wèi tā*  
     that's for me  
     *zhè shì gěi wǒde*  
     a bus for ... *qù ... de*  
     *gōnggòng qìchē*  
 forbidden *jìnzhǐ*  
 Forbidden City *gùgōng*  
 foreigner *wàiguó rén*  
 forest *sēnlín*  
 fork *chāzi*  
 fountain *pēnquán*  
 four *sì, sìgè*  
 fracture *gǔzhé*  
 free (of charge) *miǎnfèi*  
     to be free (available)  
     *yǒu kòng*  
 freezer *bīngguì*  
 Friday *xīngqīwǔ*

fridge (refrigerator) *bīngxiāng*  
 fried *chǎo*  
 fried noodles *chǎomiàn*  
 fried rice *chǎofàn*  
 friend *péngyou*  
 friendly *qīnrè rén, yǒuhào*  
 friendship store  
     *yǒuyì shāngdiàn*  
 fries *zhá tǔdòutiáo*  
 from: from Beijing to  
     Shanghai *cóng běijīng dào*  
     *shànghǎi*  
 front *qiánmiàn*  
 frozen foods *lěngdòng shípǐn*  
 fruit *shuǐguǒ*  
 fruit juice *guǒzhī*  
 fry (deep-fry) *zhá*  
 (stir-fry) *chǎo*  
 full *mǎn*  
     I'm full *wǒ bǎole*  
 funny (strange) *qíguài*  
 (amusing) *yǒu yìsi*  
 furniture *jiājù*

## G

garden *huāyuán*  
 garlic *dàsuàn*  
 gas *qìyóu, shíyóu*  
 gas station *jiāyóuzhàn*  
 gate (airport, etc.) *dēngjīkǒu*  
 get (obtain) *dédào*  
 get (fetch) *qǔ*  
     (train, bus, etc.) *zuòchē*  
 get: have you got ...?  
     *nǐ yǒu ... ma?*  
 get in (to car) *shàngchē*  
 (arrive) *dàodá*  
 get up (in morning)  
     *qǐchuáng*  
 gift *lǐwù*  
 ginger *shēngjiāng*  
 girl *nǚhái*  
 girlfriend *nǚpéngyou*  
 give *gěi*  
 glad *gāoxìng*

glass (for drinking) *jiǔbēi*,  
*bēizi* (material) *bōli*  
 glasses (spectacles) *yǎnjìng*  
 wearing glasses *dàiyǎnjìng*  
 glue *jiāoshuǐ*  
 go *qù*  
 gold *huángjīn*  
 golf/golfer *gāo'ěrfū*  
 golf course *gāo'ěrfū qíuchǎng*  
 good *hǎo*  
 good evening  
*wǎnshàng hǎo*  
 good morning  
*zǎoshàng hǎo*  
 good night *wǎn ān*  
 goodbye *zàijiàn*  
 government *zhèngfǔ*  
 granddaughter  
 (son's daughter) *sūnnǚ*  
 (daughter's daughter)  
*wàisūnnǚ*  
 grandfather  
 (paternal) *yéye, zǔfù*  
 (maternal) *wàigōng*  
 grandmother  
 (paternal) *nǎinai, zǔmǔ*  
 (maternal) *wàipó, wàizǔmǔ*  
 grandson (son's son) *sūnzi*  
 (daughter's son) *wàisūnzi*  
 grapes *pútáo*  
 grass *cǎo*  
 gray *huísè*  
 great: that's great!  
*hǎo jí le, nà tài hǎo le*  
 Great Britain *dàbúlìediān*  
 Great Wall *chángchéng*  
 green *lǜ*  
 green Chinese onion *dàcōng*  
 green tea *lǜchá*  
 greengrocer *shūcàilèi*  
 grilled *shāo*  
 ground floor *yílóu*  
 guarantee *bǎoxiǔzhèng*  
 guest *kèrén*  
 guide *dǎoyóu*  
 guidebook *dǎoyóu cè*

guided tour  
*tuántǐ cānguān*  
 gun (pistol) *shǒuqiāng*  
 (rifle) *qiāng*  
 gutter (of house) *tiāngōu*

## H

hair *tóufa*  
 hair dryer *diànchuīfēng*  
 hair salon *měifàdiàn*  
 haircut *lǐfà*  
 half *bàn*  
 half past one *yīdiǎn bàn*  
 ham *huǒtuǐ*  
 hamburger *hànǎobāo*  
 hammer *chuízi*  
 hand *shǒu*  
 hand towel *máojīn*  
 handbag *shǒutíbāo*  
 handkerchief *shǒujuān*  
 handle (noun) *bǎshǒu*  
 handsome *yīngjùn*  
 handyman *xiūlǐgōng*  
 happen *fāshēng*  
 happy *kuàilè*  
 harbor *gǎngkǒu*  
 hard (material) *yìng*  
 (difficult) *nán*  
 hard drive *yìngpán*  
 hat *màozǐ*  
 hate: I hate ...  
*wǒ zuì bù xǐhuān ...*  
 have you  
 do you have ...?  
*nǐ yǒu...ma ?*  
 I don't have ...  
*wǒ méi yǒu ...*  
 hay fever *huāfēnrè*  
 he *tā*  
 head *tóu*  
 headache *tóuténg*  
 headlights *qiándēng*  
 headquarters *zōngbù*  
 hear *tīngjiàn*  
 hearing aid *zhùtīngqì*

heart *xīnzàng*  
 heart condition  
*xīnzàngbìng*  
 heat(ing) *gòngnuǎn*  
 heavy *zhòng*  
 heel (shoe) *xiégēn*  
 (foot) *jiǎogēn*  
 hello *nǐhǎo*  
 (on the phone) *wéi*  
 help (verb) *bāngzhù*  
 help! *jiùmíng!*  
 hepatitis *gānyán*  
 her (possessive) *tāde*  
 (object) *tā*  
 herbs (cooking) *zuǒliào*  
 (medicine) *cǎoyào*  
 here *zhèlǐ, zhèr*  
 here you are  
*zhèbiān qǐng*  
 hers *tāde*  
 hi! *nǐhǎo!*  
 high *gāo*  
 hill *xiǎoshān*  
 him *tā*  
 his *tāde*  
 HIV positive  
*àizībīng yángxìng*  
 hobby *àihào*  
 home *jiā*  
 homosexual  
*tóngxìngliàn*  
 Hong Kong *xiānggǎng*  
 hood (of car) *fādòngjīgài*  
 horrible *kěpà*  
 horse *mǎ*  
 hospital *yīyuàn*  
 host *dōngdào zhǔ*  
 hot *rè* (to taste) *là*  
 hot spa *wēnquán dùjià*  
 hotel (superior, for  
 foreigners) *jiǔdiàn*  
 (small) *lǚguǎn*  
 hour *xiǎoshí*  
 house *fángzi*  
 household products *jiātíng*  
*yòngpǐn*

how? *zěnmé?*

how long?: how long

does it take?

*xūyào duōjiǔ?*

how much? *duō shǎo?*

(money) *duō shǎo qián?*

hundred *bǎi*

hungry: I'm hungry *wǒ è le*

hurry: I'm in a hurry

*wǒ méi shíjiān*

hurt *téng*

husband *zhàngfū*

## I

I *wǒ*

ice *bīng*

ice cream *bīngqílín*

if *rúguǒ*

ill *shēng bìng le*

immediately *mǎshàng*

impossible *bù kěnéng*

in *zài*

in English *yòng yīngyǔ*

India *yīndù*

indigestion *xiāohuàbùliáng*

inexpensive *piányi*

inhaler (for asthma, etc.)

*xīrùqì*

infection *gǎnrǎn*

information *xìnxī, xiāoxi*

information desk

*wènxùncù*

insect repellent *qūchóngjì*

insulated bottle *rèshuǐpíng*

insurance *bǎoxiǎn*

interesting *yǒu yìsi*

internet *yīntǎnwǎng*

internet café *wǎngbā*

interpret *zuò fānyì*

invitation *yāoqǐng*

invoice *fāpiào*

Ireland *àir'ěr'lán*

iron (for clothes)

*yùndǒu*

is *shì he/she/it is tā shì*

island *dǎo*

it *tā*

it's expensive *guì*

## J

jack (for car) *qiānjīdǐng*

jacket *jiákèshān, wàitào*

jade *yù*

January *yīyuè*

Japan *rìběn*

jasmine tea *huāchá*

jeans *niúzǎikù*

jewelry *shǒushì*

jewelry store

*zhūbǎodiàn*

job *gōngzuò*

jug *guǎn*

July *qīyuè*

June *liùyuè*

junk (boat) *fānchuán*

just (only) *jǐnjīn*

just one *jiù yīgè*

## K

karaoke *kǎlā OK*

karaoke bar

*kǎlā OK tīng*

key *yàoshi*

keyboard *jiànpán*

kick (verb) *tī*

kilo *gōngjīn*

kilometer *gōnglǐ*

kitchen *chúfáng*

knee *xī*

knife *dāo*

know: I don't know

*wǒ bù zhīdào*

Korea: North Korea

*běi cháoxiǎn*

South Korea

*nán cháoxiǎn,*

*hánguó*

## L

lady *nǚshì*

lake *hú*

lamp

*dēng, diàndēng*

lane *xiǎoxiàng*

Laos *lǎowō*

laptop (computer)

*bìjībēn diànnǎo*

large *dà*

last (previous) *shàng yīgè*

last month *shànggè yuè*

(final) *zuìhòu*

last name *xìng*

last year *qùnián*

late (at night) *wǎn*

(behind schedule) *wǎndiǎn*

*le, chí*

later *yǐhòu*

laundry detergent *xǐyǐfěn*

law (study) *fǎlǚ*

lawyer *lǚshī*

lecture

(college) *jiǎngzuò*

lecture hall *jiàoshì*

left (not right) *zuǒ*

on the left *zài zuǒbiān*

leg *tuǐ*

leisure time *xiūxián yúlè*

lemon *níngméng*

lemonade *níngméng*

*qìshuǐ*

letter (in mail) *xìnjiàn*

letter box *xìnxiāng*

lettuce *shēngcài*

library *túshūguǎn*

lie down *tǎng*

life *shēnghuó*

lift: could you give me a

lift? *nǐ néng bù néng ràng*

*wǒ dāgè chē?*

light (noun) *dēng*

have you got a light?

*jiè gè huǒ, xíng ma?*

(not heavy) *qīng*



light bulb *dēngpào*  
 lighter *dǎhǔojī*  
 like: I'd like  
     *qǐng gěiwǒ/wǒ xiǎng...*  
 I like *wǒ xǐhuān*  
 the one like that  
     *xiàng nàgè yíyàng*  
 line (phone) *xiàn*  
     outside line *wàixiàn*  
     (transportation route) *lù*  
 line (queue) *duì*  
 lipstick *kǒuhóng*  
 liquor store *jiǔlèi*  
 literature (study)  
     *wénkē*  
 liter *shēng*  
 little *xiǎo*  
     just a little  
     *jiù yídiǎndiǎn*  
 liver *gān*  
 living room *kètīng*  
 lobster *lóngxiā*  
 long *cháng*  
 lose: I've lost my ...  
     *wǒ ... diū le*  
 lost property  
     *shīwù zhāolǐng chù*  
 lot: a lot *xǔduō*  
     a lot of money  
     *xǔduō qián*  
 loud *dàshēng de*  
 love: I love you  
     *wǒ ài nǐ*  
     I'd love to come  
     *wǒ yīdìng lái*  
 lovely (person) *kě'ài*  
     (thing) *hěn hǎo*  
 low *dī*  
 luck *yùnrì*  
     good luck!  
     *zhù nǐ hǎo yùn!*  
 luggage *xíngli*  
 luggage storage  
     *xíngli jùcùchù*  
 lunch *wǔcān*

**M**  
 make *zuò*  
 make-up *huàzhuāngpǐn*  
 mail *yóujiàn*  
 mail carrier *yóudiyuán*  
 mailbox *yóuxiāng*  
 man *nánrén, nánshì*  
 manager *jīnglǐ*  
 Mandarin *pǔtōnghuà*  
 map *dìtú*  
 March *sānyuè*  
 market *shìchǎng*  
 married: I'm married  
     *wǒ jiéhūn le*  
 martial arts *wǔshù*  
 massage *ànmó*  
 matches *huǒchái*  
 material (cloth) *bù*  
 matter: what's the matter?  
     (asking about illness)  
     *nǎlǐ bù shūfu?*  
 May *wǔyuè*  
 me *wǒ*  
     it's for me *zhè shì gěi wǒde*  
 meat *ròu*  
 mechanic *jīxièshī*  
 medicine (medication) *yào*  
 medicine (study) *yīkē*  
 meet (someone) *jiàn*  
 meeting *huìyì*  
 melon *guā*  
 memory (computer)  
     *nèicún*  
 men's restrooms *nán cèsuǒ*  
 menu *càidān*  
     set menu *tàocān*  
 meter *mǐ*  
 middle: in the middle  
     *zài zhōngjiān*  
 middle-aged *zhōngnián*  
 midnight: at midnight  
     *bànyè*  
 mile *yīnglǐ*  
 milk *niúǎi*  
 million *bǎiwàn*  
 mine: it's mine *shì wǒde*

mineral water *kuàngquánshuǐ*  
 minute *fēn*  
 mirror *jìngzi*  
 Miss *xiǎojiě*  
 mistake *cùowù*  
 modem *shùjùjī,*  
     *tiáozhìjiētiáoqì*  
 Monday *xīngqīyī*  
 money *qián*  
 Mongolia *měnggǔ*  
     Inner Mongolia *nèiměng*  
     Outer Mongolia *wàiměng*  
 monkey *hóu*  
 month *yuè*  
 moon *yuèliàng*  
 more *gèng duō*  
     more than *bǐ ... duō*  
 morning *shàngwǔ,*  
     *zǎoshàng*  
 mosquito *wénzi*  
 mosquito net  
     (on door) *shāmén*  
     (on window) *shāchuāng*  
 mother *mǔqīn*  
     my mother *māma*  
 motorbike *mótuōchē*  
 mountain *shān*  
 mountain climbing  
     *dēngshān*  
 mouse (computer) *shǔbiāo*  
     (animal) *lǎoshǔ*  
 mouth *zuǐ, zuǐba*  
 movie theater  
     *diànyǐngyuàn*  
 Mr. ... *xiānsheng*  
 Mrs. ... *fūrén*  
 Ms. ... *nǚshì*  
 much *duō*  
     much better *hǎo de duō*  
 museum *bówùguǎn*  
 mushrooms *mógū*  
 music *yīnyuè*  
 must: I must *wǒ bìxū*  
 mustache *xiǎohúzi*  
 my ... *wǒde ...*  
     my name ... *wǒde míngzì ...*

## N

name *míngzì*  
 narrow *zhǎi*  
 near *jìn*  
   is it near here?  
   *lí zhèlǐ jìn ma?*  
 nearby *fùjìn*  
 necessary *bìyào*  
 neck *bózi*  
 necklace *xiàngliàn*  
 need: I need a ...  
   *wǒ xūyào ..., wǒ xiǎng ...*  
 needle *zhēn*  
 Nepal *níbó'ěr*  
 nephew *zhízi*  
 never *cónglái bù*  
 new *xīn*  
 New Year *xīnnián*  
   Happy New Year!  
   *xīnniánhǎo*  
 New Zealand *xīnxīlán*  
 news *xīnwén*  
 newspaper *bàozhǐ*  
 next *xiàiyìgè*  
   next month *xiàgè yuè*  
   next to ... *zài ... pángbiān*  
 nice (person, weather)  
   *hěn hǎo*  
   (meal) *hǎochī*  
   (town) *hěn hǎo*  
   how nice!  
   *nà tài hǎo le!*  
 niece *zhínǚ*  
 night *yè*  
   (stay in hotel) *tiān*  
 nine *jiǔ, jiǔgè*  
 no *bú, bù*  
   no entry *jìnzhǐ jìn rù*  
   no parking *jìnzhǐ tíngchē*  
 noisy *chǎonào*  
 noodles *miàntiáo*  
 noon: at noon *zhōngwǔ*  
 normal *zhèngcháng*  
 north *běi*  
 nose *bízi*  
 not *bú, bù*

not for me  
   *wǒ bú yào*  
 notepad *shūxiězhǐ*  
 nothing *méi yǒu shénme*  
 November *shíyīyuè*  
 now *xiànzài*  
 number (quantity) *shùzì*  
   (numeral) *hàomǎ*  
   telephone number  
   *diànhuà hàomǎ*  
 nurse *hùshì*  
 nuts *jiānguǒ*  
 O  
 o'clock ... *diǎn*  
 ocean *hǎi*  
 occupied (restrooms) *yǒurén*  
 October *shíyuè*  
 of ... *de*  
   the name of the hotel  
   *lǚguǎn de míngzì*  
 office *bàngōngshì*  
 office worker *bàngōng  
   rén yuán*  
 often *jīngcháng*  
 oil (motor) *jīyóu*  
   (vegetable) *càiyóu*  
 ointment *yàogāo*  
 okay *hǎo*  
 old (person) *lǎo*  
   (things) *jiù*  
 on *zài ... shàngmiàn*  
   on the roof *zài fángdǐng*  
   on the beach *zài hǎitān*  
 one *yī, yīgè*  
   that one *nà yīgè*  
 one-way ticket *dānchéng piào*  
 onion *yángcōng*  
 only *zhǐyǒu*  
 open (verb) *kāi*  
   (adj.) *kāile*  
 opera *gējù*  
   Chinese opera *jīngjù*  
 operating room *shòushùshì*  
 operator (phone) *zōngjī*  
 opposite *duìmiàn*

opposite the ...  
   *zài ... duìmiàn*  
 optician *yǎnjìngdiàn*  
 or *huòzhě*  
 orange (fruit) *gānjú*  
   (color) *júhuángsè*  
 orange juice *júzhī*  
 order (for goods, etc.)  
   *dìnggòu, dìngdān*  
 other: the other *líng yīgè*  
 other (ones) *qítā*  
 our(s) *wǒmen de*  
 out: she's out *tā bú zài*  
 outside *wàimiàn*  
 over: over there *zài nǎlǐ*  
 overpass *lǐjiāoqiáo*  
 own: on my own *zìjǐ*  
 oyster *háo*

## P

pack (of cigarettes, etc.) *bāo*  
 package *bāoguǒ*  
 paddy field *dàotián*  
 page *yè*  
 pagoda *bǎotǎ*  
 pain *téng*  
 painting (hobby) *huàhuà*  
 pair *yīshuāng*  
 pajamas *shuìyī*  
 panda *xióngmāo*  
 pants *kùzi, chángkù*  
 pantyhose *kùwà*  
 paper *zhǐ*  
 parasol *yángsǎn*  
 pardon? *nǐ shuō shénme?*  
 parcel *yóubāo*  
 parents *fùmǔ*  
 park (noun) *gōngyuán*  
   (verb) *tíngchē*  
 parking space *chēkù*  
 party (celebration) *wǎnhuì*  
   (group) *tuántǐ*  
 pass (mountain) *guānkǒu*  
 passenger *chéngkè*  
 passport *hùzhào*

passport control  
*biānfáng jiǎnchá*  
 password *mìmǎ*  
 patient (hospital, doctor, etc.)  
*bīng rén, huànzhě*  
 path *xiǎolù*  
 pavement *rénxíngdào*  
 pavilion *tíngzi*  
 pay *fùqián*  
 can I pay, please?  
*wǒ kěyǐ fùqián ma?*  
 payment *fùkuǎn*  
 pen *bǐ*  
 pencil *qiānbǐ*  
 penicillin  
*qīngméisù*  
 penknife *xiǎodāo*  
 people *rén*  
 pepper (spice) *hújiāo*  
 (red/green) *shìzǐjiāo*  
 per: ... percent *bǎifēnzhi ...*  
 perfume *xiāngshuǐ*  
 perhaps *kěnéng*  
 perm *diàntàng*  
 person *rén*  
 pharmacy *yàofáng*  
 phonecard *diànhuàkǎ*  
 photocopy *fùyìn*  
 photocopier *fùyìnjī*  
 photograph (noun) *zhàopiàn*  
 (verb) *zhàoxiàng*  
 photographer *shèyǐngshī*  
 phrase book *duìhuà shōucè*  
 physics (study) *wùlǐxué*  
 pickpocket *páshǒu*  
 picture *túpiàn*  
 piece *piàn*  
 a piece of ... *yipiàn ...*  
 pig *zhū*  
 pillow *zhěntou*  
 pin *biézhen*  
 pineapple *bōluó*  
 pink *fěnhóng*  
 pipe (smoking) *yāndǒu*  
 (water) *guǎnzǐ*  
 place *dìfāng*

plane *fēijī*  
 planner *rìzhì*  
 plant *zhíwù*  
 plastic bag *sùliàodài*  
 plate *cāndiē, pánzi*  
 platform *zhàntái*  
 play (in theater) *huàjù*  
 play (verb)  
 (sports, etc.) *dǎ*  
 (instrument) *lā*  
 please: yes, please *kěyǐ, qǐng*  
 please? *hǎo ma*  
 pleased *gāoxìng*  
 plug (electric) *chātóu*  
 plumber *guǎndàogōng*  
 pocket *yīdài*  
 poisonous *yǒudúde*  
 police *jǐngchá*  
 police officer *jǐngguān*  
 police report *jǐngfāng bàogào*  
 police station *jǐngchájú*  
 polite *yǒu lǐmào*  
 politics *zhèngzhì*  
 pond *chítáng*  
 pool *shuǐchí*  
 poor (not rich) *qióng*  
 pop music *liúxíng yīnyuè*  
 pork *zhūròu*  
 porter (hotel) *ménfáng*  
 (station, etc.)  
*bānyùn gōngrén*  
 possible *kěnéng*  
 post office *yóujú*  
 postcard *míngxìnpìàn*  
 poster *zhāotiē*  
 potato *tǔdòu*  
 pound (money) *yīngbàng*  
 pregnant *huáiyùn*  
 prepared meals *jíshí shípǐn*  
 present (gift) *lǐwù*  
 pretty *piàoliang*  
 price *jiàgé*  
 printer (machine) *dǎyìnjī*  
 problem *wèntí*  
 professor *jiàoshòu*  
 profits *lìrùn*

pronounce *fāyīn*  
 pull *lā*  
 purse *qiánbāo*  
 push *tuī*

## Q

quarter *yīkè*  
 quarter past one *yīdiǎn yīkè*  
 quarter to two *yīdiǎn sānkè*  
 question *wèntí*  
 quick *kuài*  
 quiet (place, hotel, etc.)  
*ānjìng*  
 quite: quite a lot  
*xiāngdāng duō*

## R

rabbit *tù, tùzi*  
 radiator *sànrèqì*  
 radio *shōuyīnjī*  
 railway *tiělù*  
 rain *yǔ*  
 it's raining *xiàiyǔ le*  
 rash (on body) *zhěnzhi*  
 rat *lǎoshǔ*  
 raw *shēngchī*  
 razor *tìdāo*  
 razor blades *tìhú dāopiàn*  
 read *dú*  
 reading (pastime) *dúshū*  
 ready *zhǔnbèi hǎo*  
 receipt *fāpiào, shōujiù*  
 reception *jiēdàichū*  
 (party, etc.) *jiēdàishì*  
 record (music) *chàngpiàn*  
 red *hóng*  
 red tea *hóngchá*  
 refrigerator *bīngxiāng*  
 religion *zōngjiào*  
 rent (for room, etc.)  
*fángzū* (verb) *zū*  
 for rent *chūzū*  
 repair *xiūlǐ*  
 report (noun) *bàogàoshū*

request (noun) *qǐngqiú*  
 reservation *yùdìng*  
 restaurant *cānguǎn*  
 return (come back) *fǎnhuí*  
     (give back) *huán*  
 rice (cooked) *mǐfàn*  
     (uncooked) *mǐ*  
 rice bowl *fànwǎn*  
 rice cooker *diànfànbāo*  
 rice field *dàotián*  
 rich (person) *hěn yǒuqián*  
 right (not left) *yòu*  
     on the right *zài yòubiān*  
     (correct) *duì*  
 ring (on finger) *jièzhì*  
 river *hé*  
 road *lù*  
 roasted *kǎo*  
 rocks *yánshí*  
 roof *wǔdǐng, fángdǐng*  
 room (hotel, house) *fángjiān*  
     (space) *kōngjiān*  
 room service *sòngcān fúwù*  
 rope *shéngzi*  
 round (adj.) *yuándē*  
 round-trip ticket *wǎngfǎnpào*  
 rubber (material) *xiàngjiāo*  
 rubber band *sōngjǐndài*  
 rubbish *lājī*  
 ruins *fèixū*  
 run *pǎo*  
 Russia *é guó*

# S

sad *shāngxīn*  
 safe (not in danger) *píngān*  
     (not dangerous) *ānquán*  
 safety pin *biézhēn*  
 salad *sàlā*  
 sales (company) *xiāoshòu*  
 salt *yán*  
 same *yíyàng*  
     the same again, please  
     *zài lái yíqè*  
 sand *shā, shāzi*

sandals *liángxié*  
 sandwich *sānmíngzhì*  
 sanitary towels *wèishēngjīn*  
 satellite TV *wèixīng diànshì*  
 Saturday *xīngqīliù*  
 sauce *jiàng*  
 sausage *xiāngcháng*  
 say: how do you say ...  
     in Chinese *yòng hànyǔ*  
     *zěnmē shuō ...?*  
 scallion *xiǎocōng*  
 school *xuéxiào*  
 science (study) *lǐkē*  
 scissors *jiǎndāo*  
 Scotland *sūgélán*  
 screen *píngmù*  
 screwdriver *luósídāo*  
 seafood *hǎixiān*  
 seat *zuòwèi*  
     take a seat *zuò*  
 seat belt *ānquándài*  
 second (in series) *dì'èr*  
     (of time) *miǎo*  
 secretary *mìshū*  
 section (of store) *dìfāng*  
 see *kànjiàn*  
     I see! *shì zhèyàng*  
 self-employed *gètíhù*  
 sell *mài*  
 seminar *zuòtánhuì*  
 separately (pay) *fēnkāi fù*  
 September *jiǔyuè*  
 serious (illness) *yánzhòng*  
 sesame oil *máyóu, zhīmáyóu*  
 set (theater) *bùjǐng*  
 seven *qī, qīgè*  
 shade: in the shade  
     *zài yīnliáng chù*  
 shampoo *xǐfàjīng*  
 shave *guāhúzi*  
 shaving cream *tìxūgāo*  
 she *tā*  
 sheep *yáng*  
 sheet (for bed) *chuángdān*  
 ship *chuán*  
 shirt *chènshān*

shoe store *xiédiàn*  
 shoelaces *xiédài*  
 shoes *xiézi*  
 shopkeeper *diànzhǔ*  
 shopping (activity) *gòuwù*  
 shopping cart *shòutuīchē*  
 short *ǎi*  
     (time) *duǎn*  
 shorts *duǎnkù*  
 shoulder *jiānbǎng*  
 shower (in bathroom) *línǚ*  
 shower gel *yùyè*  
 shrimp *xiā*  
 shut *guān*  
 shutter *chuāngbǎn*  
 Siberia *xībóliya*  
 siblings *xiōngdìjījiěmèi*  
 side mirror *hòushìjìng*  
 side street *xiǎojiē*  
 sight: the sights of...  
     *fēngjǐng ...*  
 sightseeing *guānguāng*  
 signature *qiānmíng*  
 silk *sīchóu*  
 Silk Road *sīchóu zhī lù*  
 silver *yín*  
 sing *chànggē*  
 Singapore *xīnjiāpō*  
 single: I'm single  
     *wǒ shì dānshēn*  
 single room *dānrén*  
     *fáng*  
 sink *shuǐchí*  
 sister (older) *jiějie*  
     (younger) *mèime*  
 sit *zuò*  
 six *liù, liùgè*  
 skirt *qúnzi*  
 sky *tiānkōng*  
 sleep *shuìjiào*  
 sleeper car *wòpù*  
     *chēxiāng*  
 sleeve *xiùzi*  
 slippers *tuōxié*  
 slow(ly) *màn*  
 small *xiǎo*

smell (have bad smell) <i>nánwén de qìwèi</i>	station (railway) <i>huǒchēzhàn</i>	suppository <i>shuānjì</i>
smile (verb) <i>xiào</i>	steak <i>niúpái</i>	sure: I'm sure <i>wǒ quèxìn</i>
smoke (noun) <i>yān</i>	steal: my bag has been stolen	are you sure? <i>nǐ néng kěndìng ma?</i>
do you smoke? <i>nǐ xīyān ma</i>	<i>wǒde bāo bèi tōu le</i>	sweat (noun) <i>hàn</i>
snacks <i>xiǎochī, língshí</i>	what was stolen? <i>diūshī le shénme?</i>	(verb) <i>chūhàn</i>
snake <i>shé</i>	steamed <i>zhēng</i>	sweater <i>tàoshān</i>
so: so good <i>zhēnhǎo</i>	steps <i>táijiē</i>	sweet (adj.) <i>tián</i>
not so much <i>búyào nàme duō</i>	sticky rice <i>nuòmi</i>	(confectionery) <i>tángguǒ</i>
soap <i>féizào</i>	stockings <i>chángtǒngwà</i>	sweet and sour <i>tángcù</i>
soccer <i>zúqiú</i>	stomach <i>fù, dùzi, wèi</i>	sweet shop <i>gāodiǎnlèi</i>
socks <i>wàzi</i>	stomachache <i>wèitòng</i>	sweltering: it's sweltering <i>mènrè</i>
socializing <i>shèjiāo</i>	stones <i>shítou</i>	swim (verb) <i>yóuyóng</i>
sofa <i>shāfā</i>	stop (bus stop) <i>chēzhàn</i>	swimming <i>yóuyóng</i>
soft (material, etc.) <i>ruǎn</i>	stop! <i>tíng!</i>	swimsuit <i>yóuyóngyī</i>
soft drink (ruǎn) <i>yīnliào</i>	stop here <i>zài zhèlǐ tíng</i>	swimming pool <i>yóuyóngchí</i>
soil (earth) <i>tǔ</i>	store <i>shāngdiàn</i>	swimming trunks <i>yóuyóngkù</i>
sole (of shoes) <i>xiédǐ</i>	storm <i>bàofēngyǔ</i>	syringe <i>zhùshèqì</i>
somebody <i>yǒurén</i>	stove <i>lúzaò</i>	syrup (medicinal) <i>tángjiāng</i>
something <i>yǒuxiē dōngxi</i>	straight; it's straight ahead <i>yīzhí cháoqián</i>	
sometimes <i>yǒushí</i>	go straight ahead <i>zhàozhízhōu</i>	<b>T</b> T-shirt <i>duǎnxiù</i>
somewhere <i>mǒuchù</i>	street <i>jiē</i>	<i>yuánlǐng hànsān</i>
son <i>érzi</i>	string <i>xìshéng</i>	table <i>zhuōzi</i>
song <i>gē</i>	student <i>xuéshēng</i>	table tennis <i>pīngpāng</i>
soon <i>bùjiǔ</i>	stupid <i>yúchǔn</i>	tablets <i>yàopiàn</i>
sorry <i>duibuqǐ</i>	subway <i>dìtiě</i>	Taiwan <i>táiwān</i>
sorry? <i>nǐ shuō shénme?</i>	subway station <i>dìtiě zhàn</i>	take (transportation) <i>chéng</i>
soup <i>tāng</i>	sugar <i>táng</i>	(someone somewhere) <i>dàilǐng</i>
south <i>nán</i>	suit (noun) <i>xīzhuāng</i>	(something somewhere) <i>dài</i>
souvenir <i>jìniànpǐn</i>	suitcase <i>xiāngzi</i>	talk (verb) <i>shuōhuà</i>
soy sauce <i>jiàngyóu</i>	summer <i>xià</i>	tall <i>gāo</i>
speak <i>jiǎng</i>	Summer Palace <i>yíhéyuán</i>	tampons <i>miánsāi</i>
spider <i>zhīzhū</i>	sun <i>tàiyáng</i>	Taoism <i>dàojiào</i>
spoon <i>tiáogēng, sháozi</i>	sunblock (cream) <i>fángshàirǔ</i>	tape (cassette) <i>cídài</i>
sports <i>tǐyù</i>	sunburned <i>shàishāngle</i>	(invisible adhesive) <i>tòumíng jiāodài</i>
spring (season) <i>chūn</i>	Sunday <i>xīngqīrì</i>	taxi <i>chūzūchē</i>
square <i>guǎngchǎng</i>	sunglasses <i>tàiyángjìng</i>	taxi stand <i>chūzūchē zhàn</i>
stage (theater) <i>wǔtái</i>	sunshade <i>yángsǎn</i>	tea <i>chá</i>
stairs <i>lóutī</i>	sunstroke <i>zhōngshǔ</i>	tea with milk <i>nǎichá</i>
stamp (for letter) <i>yóupiào</i>	suntan lotion <i>fángshàijì</i>	teacher <i>lǎoshī</i>
stapler <i>dīngshūjī</i>	supermarket <i>chāoji shìchǎng</i>	
start (noun) <i>kāishǐ</i>		
starters <i>tóupán</i>		
statement (e.g. witness) <i>zhèngcí</i>		



telegram *diànbào*  
 telephone *diànhuàjī, diànhuà*  
 telephone card  
*diànhuà kǎ, IP kǎ*  
 telephone number  
*diànhuà hàomǎ*  
 television *diànshì*  
 tell *gàosu*  
 temperature  
     (weather) *qìwēn*  
     (fever) *fāshāo*  
 temple *miào*  
 tent *zhàngpéng*  
 terminal (airport, etc.)  
*hòujīlóu*  
 Terracotta Army  
*bīngmǎyǒng*  
 terrible *zhēn zāogāo*  
 test (hospital) *huànyàn*  
 Thailand *tàiguó*  
 than *bǐ ... gèng*  
     smaller than *bǐ ... xiǎo*  
 thank you *xièxie(nǐ)*  
 that: that woman *nàwèi nǚshì*  
     that man *nàwèi nánshì*  
     what's that *nà shì shénme?*  
 theater *jùchǎng, jùyuàn*  
 their(s) *tāmende*  
 them *tāmen*  
 theme park  
*zhǔtígōngyuán*  
 then (after that) *ránhòu*  
     (at that time) *nàshí*  
 there *nǎlǐ*  
     there is/are *yǒu ...*  
     is/are there...? *yǒu ... ma?*  
     there isn't/aren't ...  
     *méi yǒu ...*  
 these *zhèxiē*  
 they *tāmen*  
 thick *hòu*  
 thief *páshǒu*  
 thin (thing) *báo*  
     (person) *shòu*  
 thing *dōngxi*  
 think *xiǎng*

thirsty: I'm thirsty  
*wǒ kǒu kě*  
 this: this street  
*zhè tiáo jiē*  
     this one *zhègè*  
     what's this?  
*zhè shì shénme?*  
 thousand *qiān*  
     ten thousand *wàn*  
 those *nàxiē*  
 three *sān, sāngè*  
 throat *hóulóng*  
 through *jīngguò*  
 thunderstorm *léiyǔ*  
 Thursday *xīngqīsi*  
 Tibet *xízàng*  
 ticket *piào*  
     admission ticket *ménpiào*  
     train/bus ticket *chēpiào*  
     airline ticket *jīpiào*  
 tie (around neck) *lǐngdài*  
 tiger *hǔ*  
 time *shíjiān*  
     next time *xiàcì*  
     on time *zhǔndiǎn*  
     what time is it?  
*xiànzài jǐdiǎn le?*  
 timetable *shíjiānbiǎo*  
 tip (money) *xiǎofèi*  
 tired *lèi*  
 tissues *shǒuzhǐ*  
 to *dào*  
     to England *qù yīnggélán*  
 toast (bread) *kǎo miànbāopiàn*  
 today *jīntiān*  
 tofu *dòufu*  
 tofu shop *dòufudiàn*  
 together *yīqǐ*  
 toilet *cèsuǒ*  
 toilet paper *wèishēngzhǐ*  
 tomato *xīhóngshì*  
 tomorrow *míngtiān*  
 tonight *jīntiān wǎnshàng*  
 too (also) *yě*  
     (excessively) *tài*  
 tooth *yá*

toothache *yá téng*  
 toothbrush *yáshuā*  
 toothpaste *yágāo*  
 tour (noun) *lǚxíng*  
 tourist *lǚxíngzhě*  
 tourist information office  
*lǚyóu fúwù zhōngxīn*  
 towel *máojiān*  
 town *chéngzhèn*  
 traditional *chuántǒng*  
 traffic lights *hóng lǜ*  
*dēng*  
 train *huǒchē*  
 transformer *biànyāqì*  
 translate *fānyì*  
 travel agency *lǚxíngshè*  
 traveling *lǚyóu*  
 tree *shù*  
 trip (journey) *lǚxíng*  
 true *zhēnde*  
 trunk *xuēzi* (car) *hòubèixiāng*  
 try (test) *shìshì*  
 Tuesday *xīngqī'èr*  
 turn *zhuǎn*  
     turn left *zuǒ zhuǎn*  
     turn right *yòu zhuǎn*  
 two *èr, liǎnggè*  
 tweezers *nièzi*  
 tire *chētāi, lúntāi*

## U

umbrella *yǔsǎn*  
 uncle *shūshu*  
 under *zài ... xiànmian*  
 unfortunately *kěxī*  
 United States *měiguó*  
 urgent *jízhěn*

## V

vacation *jiàqī*  
     on vacation *dùjià*  
     (public) *jiéqī*  
 vaccination *yùfángjiēzhōng*  
 vanilla *xiānggāocǎo*

vase *huāpíng*  
 vegetables *shūcài*  
 vegetarian *sùshízhě*  
 very *hěn, fēicháng*  
 very well (okay) *hǎoba*  
 video games *diànzǐ yóuxì*  
 videotape *lùxiàngdài*  
 Vietnam *yuènnán*  
 view (scenery) *jǐngsè*  
 village *cūnzhuāng*  
 violin *xiǎotíqín*  
 visa *qiānzhèng*  
 visit (place) *cānguān*  
     (people) *bàifǎng*  
 visiting hours  
     *tànwàng shíjiān*  
 voice *shēngyīn*  
 voicemail *liúyánjī*  
 voltage *diànyǎ*  
 vomit (verb) *ǒutù*

## W

wait *děng*  
 waiter *zhāodài*  
 waiting room (clinic)  
     *hòuzhěnshì*  
 waitress *fúwùyuán*  
 Wales *wēi'ěershì*  
 wall *qiáng*  
     the Great Wall of China  
     *chángchéng*  
 wallet *qiánbāo*  
 walk, go for a walk *sànbù*  
 want: I want *wǒ yào*  
 ward (hospital)  
     *bìngfáng*  
 warm *nuǎnhuo*  
 washing machine *xǐyījī*  
 wasp *huángfēng*  
 watch (wrist) *shǒubiǎo*  
     (verb) *kàn*  
 water *shuǐ*  
 we *wǒmen*  
 weather *tiānqì*  
 website *wǎngzhàn*

wedding *hūnlǐ*  
 Wednesday *xīngqīsān*  
 week *xīngqī*  
 welcome *huānyíng*  
     you're welcome  
     *bú kèqì*  
 well: I don't feel well  
     *wǒ gǎnjué bù shūfu*  
 west *xī*  
 Western-style *xīshì*  
 wet *shī*  
 what? *shénme?*  
 wheel *lúnzi*  
     (vehicle) *chēlún*  
 wheelchair *lúnyǐ*  
 when? *shénme*  
     *shíhou?*  
 where? *nǎr, nǎlǐ*  
 where: where is ...?  
     ... *zài nǎlǐ?*  
 which: which one?  
     *nǎ yīgè?*  
 whisky *wēishìjī*  
 white *bái*  
 who? *shéi?*  
     who's calling?  
     *nín shì shéi ya?*  
 why? *wèi shénme?*  
 wide *kuān*  
 wife *qīzi*  
 wind *fēng*  
 window *chuānghù*  
 windshield *dǎngfēngbōlǐ*  
 wine *pútáojiǔ*  
     wine list *jiǔshuǐ dān*  
 winter *dōng*  
 with *hé ...*  
 without *méiyǒu*  
 witness *zhèngrén*  
 woman *nǚrén, nǚshì*  
 women's restrooms  
     *nǚwèishēnjiān,*  
     *nǚ cèsuǒ*  
 wood *mùtou*  
 wool *yángmáo*  
 word *cí*

work (noun) *gōngzuò* (verb)  
     *gōngzuò* it's not  
     working *huài le*  
 worry: don't worry  
     *bié dānxīn*  
 wrench *huó bǎnshǒu*  
 write *xiě*  
     could you write  
     it down?  
     *nǐ néng bù néng xiě yíxià ?*  
 wrong *cuò*

## X

X-ray *x-guāng*

## Y

Yangtze Gorges  
     *chángjiāng sānxiá*  
 Yangtze River *chángjiāng*  
 year *nián*  
 yellow *huáng*  
 Yellow River *huánghé*  
 Yellow Sea *huánghǎi*  
 yes *shìde*  
 yesterday *zuótiān*  
 yet: not yet  *hái méine*  
 yogurt *suānnǎi*  
 you *nǐ*  
     (formal) *nín*  
     (plural) *nǐmen*  
 young *niánqīng*  
 your(s) *nǐde*  
     (plural) *nǐmen de*

## Z

zipper *lǎiliàn*  
 zoo *dòngwùyuán*

# THE CHINESE WRITING SYSTEM

## Introduction

Chinese characters evolved from pictograms. These crude drawings originally resembled the object or idea they referred to (for example, an animal or a natural feature). In this way, Chinese writing developed as a series of ideograms, or characters, and not as an alphabet. But over time the characters became more complex. In modern Chinese, a few characters still bear a discernable likeness to the object they refer to, but most have changed beyond recognition.

Unlike an alphabet, Chinese characters do not carry an immediate clue as to their pronunciation—you can't look at one as a beginner and know (or even guess) how to say it. Each character needs to be learned individually. This may at first seem like a daunting task, and no one would pretend it is a fast process. On the other hand, when you understand how the Chinese language combines basic concepts to produce more complex ideas, you will see that even a few basic characters can take you a long way.

The purpose of this section is to show how you can start to decipher the characters, beginning with the simplest and most common. Writing the characters is another skill, and one for which you will need a specialty book showing the order and direction of the strokes making up each character.

## Traditional and simplified characters

During the 1950s and 1960s, the People's Republic of China (mainland China) developed a simplified set of Chinese characters in an effort to promote literacy among the general population. The number of strokes in many characters was reduced and the shape simplified.

The simplified set of characters is used today in the PRC, although some other Chinese-speaking regions, notably Taiwan, still use the traditional set. *15 Minute Mandarin Chinese* uses simplified characters, as this is the most useful set for beginners to learn.

## Basic concepts

Some basic concepts and natural features are represented by a single character, and the simplest of these are the easiest characters to recognize at first.

## Numbers

The basic Chinese characters representing numbers are easily recognized. The characters for the numbers one to five also show the significance of the number and order of the strokes (see Read it box, p.14).

一	yī (one)	六	liù (six)
二	èr (two)	七	qī (seven)
三	sān (three)	八	bā (eight)
四	sì (four)	九	jiǔ (nine)
五	wǔ (five)	十	shí (ten)

Once you can recognize and say these characters, you can combine them to produce higher numbers:

十一	shíyī (eleven—"ten one")
十二	shí'èr (twelve—"ten two")
十九	shíjiǔ (nineteen—"ten nine")
八十	bāshí (eighty—"eight ten")
四十	sìshí (forty—"four ten")
六十五	liùshíwǔ (sixty-five—"six ten five")

Add one more character and you can recognize all the months of the year:

三月	<i>sānyuè</i> (March—"three month")
七月	<i>qīyuè</i> (July—"seven month")
十一月	<i>shíyīyuè</i> (November—"eleven month")

And another one to tell time:

四点	<i>sìdiǎn</i> (four o'clock—"four point")
八点	<i>bādiǎn</i> (eight o'clock—"eight point")
十二点	<i>shí'èr diǎn</i> (twelve o'clock—"twelve point")

The same principle works with the days of the week and other numerical concepts. So with just 12 characters, you can already recognize dozens of words.

## Natural features

Some of the first pictograms to develop were probably those representing natural features (e.g. *river*, *mountain*, *horse*, etc.). They are still among the simplest and most memorable characters, sometimes retaining a resemblance to the original concept (see *mountain*, *tree*, and *person*, for example).

山	<i>shān</i> (mountain)	水	<i>shuǐ</i> (water)
树	<i>shù</i> (tree)	土	<i>tǔ</i> (soil)
羊	<i>yáng</i> (sheep)	马	<i>mǎ</i> (horse)
人	<i>rén</i> (person)	鱼	<i>yú</i> (fish)



## Basic grammatical words

Some characters representing basic grammatical concepts recur frequently:

我	wǒ (I)	你	nǐ (you)
他	tā (he)	她	tā (she)
是	shì (am/are/is)	的	de (of/belonging to)
们	men (plural indicator)		

If you learn to recognize these seven basic characters, the literal nature of Chinese means that you will be able to recognize a vocabulary equivalent to over three times as many English words (I, you, he, she, we, they, my, your, his, her, our, their, mine, yours, ours, theirs, me, him, I'm, you're, we're, she's, etc.), for example:

我们	wǒmen (we)	他们	tāmen (they)
我的	wǒde (my)	你的	nǐde (your)
我们的	wǒmende (our)		

## Other common characters

There are other commonly recurring Chinese characters that will open the door to entire vocabulary sets for you, for example:

大	dà (big)	小	xiǎo (small)
车	chē (vehicle)	机	jī (machine)
店	diàn (store)	好	hǎo (good/well)
晚	wǎn (late/evening)	早	zǎo (early/morning)
餐	cān (meal)	很	hěn (very)

You can often find these characters in combination with others. Here are a few examples from *15 Minute Mandarin Chinese*:

早餐	<i>zǎocān</i> (breakfast—"early meal")
晚餐	<i>wǎncān</i> (dinner—"late meal")
餐馆	<i>cānguǎn</i> (restaurant- "meal place")
你好	<i>nǐhǎo</i> (hello—"you well")
很好	<i>hěnhǎo</i> (very good)
早上好	<i>zǎoshàng hǎo</i> (good morning—"early time good")
晚上好	<i>wǎnshàng hǎo</i> (good evening—"late time good")
出租车	<i>chūzūchē</i> (taxi—"hire vehicle")
火车	<i>huǒchē</i> (train—"fire vehicle")
车票	<i>chēpiào</i> (ticket—"vehicle fare")
小胡子	<i>xiǎohúzi</i> (mustache—"small beard")
小路	<i>xiǎolù</i> (path—"small road")
小吃	<i>xiǎochī</i> (snacks—"small eat")
大学	<i>dàxué</i> (college—"big school")
鞋店	<i>xiédiàn</i> (shoe store)

书店

*shūdiàn* (bookstore)

飞机

*fēijī* (plane—"flying machine")

复印机

*fùyìnjī* (photocopier—"photocopy machine")

## Summary

---

Understanding the principle of how the Chinese script works will enable you to break down a string of characters representing a word or phrase. It will help you identify familiar and unfamiliar characters. For example, look at the following sentence from the first conversation in *15 Minute Mandarin Chinese*:

你好, 我的名字是韩红。

(Hello. My name's Han Hong.)

Because you are now familiar with some basic characters, you can identify the characters that mean "hello," "my," and "is." You can also deduce the characters for *name* (名字 *míngzì*) and *Han Hong* (韩红). More importantly, you will understand better the structure of the Chinese sentence (literally "you well. I-belonging to name is Han Hong").

Look back over other words and phrases in *15 Minute Mandarin Chinese* and do your own detective work. You will realize that every word and phrase does not have to be learned in isolation. The common characters with their shared sounds and meanings will help you build your Chinese vocabulary.

# USEFUL SIGNS

Here are some useful signs you may see around you in China. Try to apply the principle of breaking down the combinations into their component characters to help you recognize them. You will also find common road signs on pp.44-45.

入口

*rùkǒu*

Entrance

出口

*chūkǒu*

Exit

厕所

*cèsuǒ*

Restrooms (toilets)

男厕所

*náncèsuǒ*

Men's restroom

女厕所

*nǚcèsuǒ*

Women's restroom

危险

*wēixiǎn*

Danger

禁止吸烟

*jìnzhǐ xīyān*

No smoking

警察局

*jǐngchájú*  
Police station

医院

*yīyuàn*  
Hospital

银行

*yínháng*  
Bank

自动提款机

*zìdòng tíkuǎnjī*  
ATM

邮局

*yóujú*  
Post office

火车站

*huǒchēzhàn*  
Train station

机场

*jīchǎng*  
Airport



# Acknowledgments

The publisher would like to thank the following for their help in the preparation of this book: Tamlyn Calitz for editorial assistance, Capel Manor College, Toyota (GB), Magnet Kitchens Kentish Town, Xerox UK, Wei Wei Zhu, Hannah Ho, Lik-Chung Li, Teresa Miao, Dave Wong, Oliver Stockdale, and Clive Moset.

Language content for Dorling Kindersley by g-and-w publishing  
Managed by Jane Wightwick

Picture research: Lee Riches

Illustration: Hugh Schermuly and Lee Riches

## Picture credits

Key: t=top; b=bottom; l=left, r=right; c=center; A=above; B=below

p1 DK Images: Wu Ming c; p2/3 DK Images: Colin Sinclair l; p4/5 DK Images: tcl; Colin Sinclair tl, Linda Whitwam tr, Howard Rice br; **Ingram Image Library**: tcr; **Alamy**: medicolor's bcl; p6/7 **Laura Knox**: cl; p14/15 **DK Images**: Paul Bricknell cAl; **Ingram Image Library**: cbl, cAr; p16/17 **Ingram Image Library**: ctr; p18/19 **DK Images**: David Murray tr; Andy Crawford cl; p22/23 **Alamy**: Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd cl, **Alamy**: medicolor's tcr; p24/25 **Alamy**: Charlie Lim cl; **DK Images**: Wu Ming bl, **Ingram Image Library**: tcr; p28/29 **DK Images**: John Bulmer tcr; **Alamy**: Christophe Testi cr; **Ingram Image Library**: bcr; p30/31 **Alamy**: Comstock Images bcl; **DK Images**: cl; **Alamy**: Ferruccio cr; p34/35 **Takehisa Yano**: tcr; **Alamy**: Kevin Foy tBr, **Alamy**: Charlie Lim cr; **Dreamstime.com**: Slobodan Mračina (cl); **iStockphoto.com**: nicolas\_ (tcr, clb); p36/37 **DK Images**: cbr; **Dreamstime.com**: Slobodan Mračina (cla); **iStockphoto.com**: nicolas\_ (cla/sim card); p38/39 **DK Images**: Wu Ming bl-r, **Alamy**: Ulana Switucha c, **Alamy**: Mike Goldwater tcr, **Alamy**: Dbimages cr; p40/41 **Alamy**: David Robinson/Snap2000 Images cl; **DK Images**: Karen Trist © Rough Guides bl, **DK Images**: Bryn Walls tcr, tcrB, cr, cbr, **DK Images**: Colin Sinclair cAr; **Alamy**: David Robinson/Snap2000 Images bcrA; p42/43 **DK Images**: Wu Ming bl-r, cr, cBr; p44/45 **Alamy**: Frank Herholdt bc; Jackson Smith cBl; Pat Behnke cr; **Alamy**: Bananastock cl; ThinkStock tcr; **DK Images**: Andy Crawford bclA; p56/57 **DK Images**: cl, clA, tl, tr; Linda Whitwam tBr, Chris Stowers tcl; **Alamy**: JTB Photo Communications, Inc. clA; p50/51 **Takehisa Yano**: tcr; **DK Images**: c; **Alamy**: LOOK Die Bildagentur der Fotografen GmbH cr; p52/53 **DK Images**: Colin Sinclair cl; **Ingram Image Library**: tcr; **Alamy**: David Crausby cAr; **DK Images**: Wu Ming bl-r, cr, cBr; p54/55 **Alamy**: Frank Herholdt bc; Jackson Smith cBl; Pat Behnke cr; **Alamy**: Bananastock cl; ThinkStock tcr; **DK Images**: Andy Crawford bclA; p56/57 **DK Images**: cl, clA, tl, tr; Linda Whitwam tBr, Chris Stowers tcl; **Alamy**: JTB Photo Communications, Inc. clA; **Toyota (GB)**: bl, cBr; p58/59 **Alamy**: Brand X Pictures cBl; **ImageSource cAAI**; **Alamy**: Ingram Publishing cr; p60/61 **123RF.com**: shutswis (db); **Alamy**: ImageSource cBr, cr; **DK Images**: Bryn Walls bl; Steve Gorton cAr; Pia Tryde cAr, bcr; p62/63 **DK Images**: Wu Ming bl-r, c; Jo Foord cr; Andy Crawford crA; Geoff Brightling crB; p64/65 **DK Images**: c; **Alamy**: Arcaid bcrA; **Alamy**: Diana Ninov cAr; **Ingram Image Library**: tcr; p66/67 **Alamy**: Arcaid cl; **DK Images**: Wu Ming bc; **Ingram Image Library**: bcr; **Alamy**: ImageSource cr; p68/69 **DK Images**: cBr, Wu Ming clAl, cl, cBr, cbr; Geoff Brightling bl; **Hugh Sykes**: clAr, cl, clBl, ctr, cAr; p70/71 **123RF.com**: Sergey Skripnikov. MacBook® is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. (c); Norberto Mario Lauria (cb); **DK Images**: Wu Ming bl-r; **Dreamstime.com**: Bombaert (cl); Lwi1977 (clb); Milotus. Magic Mouse® is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. (clb/ Mouse); p72/73 **Alamy**: Comstock Images tcr; **Hugh Sykes**: tcrB; **Alamy**: Belinda Lawley crA; Tina Manley/Business cr; p74/75 **Alamy RF**: Doug Norman bl; p76/77 **123RF.com**: Norberto Mario Lauria (cl/ Bag); Sergey Skripnikov. MacBook® is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. (ca); **DK Images**: Wu Ming bcl, bcAll, bcAll, cbr; **Dreamstime.com**: Bombaert (cla); Lwi1977 (cl); Milotus. Magic Mouse® is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. (cla/ Mouse); **Hugh Sykes**: bcAll, bcAll, bcAl; p80/81 **Getty**: Taxi / Rob Melnychuk bc; **Ingram Image Library**: cAr; Xerox UK Ltd: tcr; p82/83 **Alamy**: Jack Sullivan tcr; **Alamy**: Momentum Creative Group cAl; **Ingram Image Library**: cl; p84/85 **DK Images**: bl; **Alamy RF**: SuperStock tr, Brand X Pictures cr; **Ingram Image Library**: crB; p86/87 **Getty**: Taxi / Rob Melnychuk tc; **DK Images**: bcrA; Wu Ming bcrAA; p88/89 **DK Images**: Wu Ming bl-r, **Alamy**: Ace Stock Limited tcr; p90/91 **DK Images**: cl; David Jordan cAr; Stephen Oliver cr; **Ingram Image Library**: cBr; p92/93 **Ingram Image Library**: cl; **Alamy**: Pixland cr; **DK Images**: Guy Ryeart tr; p94/95 **Alamy**: ImageState Royalty Free bcr; **DK Images**: tcr; p96/97 **DK Images**: ctB; p98/99 **Getty Images**: Daisuke Morita c; **DK Images**: Frank Greenaway bcl; p100/101 **DK Images**: Steve Gorton tcr; p102/103 **DK Images**: Peter Chen bl; Andrew Butler tr; Bruce Forster tcrB; Linda Whitwam cr; Howard Rice crA; p104/105 **DK Images**: Bob Langrish cl(5); Jane Burton bcl; Max Gibbs cl(3); Frank Greenaway cl(2); Tracy Morgan c(4); Dave King cl(1); p106/107 **Getty Images**: Daisuke Morita cr; **DK Images**: bcr; p110/111 **Alamy**: Stockbyte cl; **Alamy**: Charlie Lim tcr; p112/113 **Ingram Image Library**: bl; **Alamy**: Real World People tcrB; Geoff A Howard cl; p114/115 **Alamy**: View Stock cl; Ace Stock Limited cr; **DK Images**: Linda Whitwam tcr; p116/117 **DK Images**: Wu Ming bcr; **Alamy**: Geoff A Howard clA; p118/119 **Alamy RF**: Stock Image/Pixland tcr; **DK Images**: Courtesy of the Chinese Opera Institute, Singapore c; p120/121 **Alamy**: ImageState cl; **DK Images**: bc; p122/123 **DK Images**: Judith Miller / Sparkle Moore at The Girl Can't Help It cl; **Alamy**: Geoff A Howard c; p124/125 **DK Images**: Bob Langrish ctr(3); Max Gibbs cl(4); Frank Greenaway clA(2); Tracy Morgan cr(5); Dave King cl(1); **Alamy**: ImageState bclA; **DK Images**: bcl; p126/127 **DK Images**: Wu Ming cl, cl, cl; **Ingram Image Library**: brAA; **Alamy**: David Crausby br; **Getty Images**: Rob Melnychuk (cr); p128 **DK Images**: Neil Mersh tl.

All other studio and location images: Mike Good